

Министерство здравоохранения Республики Беларусь

УЧРЕЖДЕНИЕ ОБРАЗОВАНИЯ  
«ГРОДНЕНСКИЙ ГОСУДАРСТВЕННЫЙ МЕДИЦИНСКИЙ  
УНИВЕРСИТЕТ»

Кафедра иностранных языков

Dmitri Kondratyev  
Alla Ryabova

Д.К. Кондратьев  
А.М. Рябова

## MEDICAL LATIN

Course of Latin Language for foreign students at educational institutions  
providing higher medical education

## МЕДИЦИНСКАЯ ЛАТЫНЬ

Пособие по латинскому языку для студентов факультета иностранных  
учащихся с английским языком обучения

Гродно  
ГрГМУ  
2011

УДК 811.124 : 61 (075.8)  
ББК 81.2 Латин – 923  
К64

Рекомендовано Центральным научно-методическим советом УО «ГрГМУ»  
(протокол № 5 от 28.04.2011 г.).

Авторы: зав. каф. иностранных языков, доц., канд. филол. наук  
Д.К. Кондратьев;  
ст. препод. каф. иностранных языков А.М. Рябова.

Под общей редакцией Д.К. Кондратьева.

Рецензент: начальник учебно-методического отдела доц., канд. филол. наук  
Л.Н. Гущина.

**Кондратьев, Д.К.**

К64 Медици́нская латы́нь : пособие по латинскому языку для студентов факультета иностранных учащихся с английским языком обучения / Д.К. Кондратьев, А.М. Рябова; под общей редакцией Д.К. Кондратьева. – Гродно : ГрГМУ, 2011. – 284 с. = Medical Latin : course of Latin Language for foreign students at educational institutions providing higher medical education / D.Kondratyev, A.M. Ryabova; under the general editorship of D.Kondratyev – Grodno : GrSMU, 2011. – 284 p.  
ISBN 978-985-496-789-9

This student manual is meant for the full-time first-year students of the Faculty of Foreign Students (medium of instruction – English). This book provides modern coverage of the Medical Latin and Fundamentals of Modern Medical Terminology. It presents a wide range of information that future medical doctors will find useful in professional practice. All major aspects of modern medical terminology are covered, including anatomical, pharmaceutical and clinical terminologies.

**УДК 811.124 : 61 (075.8)**  
**ББК 81.2 Латин – 923**

# Table of Contents

	Page
<b>Introduction</b> .....	<b>5</b>
<b>ANATOMICAL TERMS</b> .....	<b>8</b>
<b>LESSON 1.</b> Latin Alphabet. Pronunciation of Latin Vowels and Consonants.....	<b>8</b>
<b>LESSON 2.</b> Pronunciation of Diphthongs and Letter Combinations .....	<b>15</b>
<b>LESSON 3.</b> Placement of Stress in Latin.....	<b>21</b>
<b>LESSON 4.</b> Latin Nouns. Anatomical Terms.....	<b>27</b>
<b>LESSON 5.</b> Adjective. Adjectives of the 1st and 2nd Declensions.....	<b>35</b>
<b>LESSON 6.</b> Adjectives of the Third Declension. Adjectives with one ending. ....	<b>41</b>
<b>LESSON 7.</b> Degrees of Comparison of Adjectives .....	<b>45</b>
<b>LESSON 8.</b> Third Declension Nouns. Masculine Gender.....	<b>52</b>
<b>LESSON 9.</b> Third Declension Nouns. Feminine Gender .....	<b>59</b>
<b>LESSON 10.</b> Third Declension Nouns. Neuter Gender .....	<b>63</b>
<b>LESSON 11.</b> Nominative Plural .....	<b>67</b>
<b>LESSON 12.</b> Genitive Plural .....	<b>72</b>
<b>LESSON 13.</b> Review .....	<b>77</b>
Latin-English Vocabulary .....	<b>81</b>
English-Latin Vocabulary.....	<b>91</b>
<b>LATIN PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY AND MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION</b> .....	<b>99</b>
<b>LESSON 1.</b> Introduction to Latin Pharmaceutical Terminology. ....	<b>99</b>
<b>LESSON 2.</b> Standard Prescription Phrases.....	<b>111</b>
<b>LESSON 3.</b> Medical Prescription. Latin Part of a Prescription .....	<b>117</b>
<b>LESSON 4.</b> Particular Cases of Prescription Writing .....	<b>128</b>

<b>LESSON 5. Latin Chemical Terminology .....</b>	<b>140</b>
<b>LESSON 6. Latin Names of Salts .....</b>	<b>149</b>
<b>LESSON 7. Revision .....</b>	<b>159</b>
Latin-English Vocabulary .....	170
English-Latin Vocabulary.....	176
<b>GREEK-LATIN CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY.....</b>	
<b>LESSON 1. Introduction to Clinical Terminology. Combining Forms Denoting Pathological Conditions. ....</b>	<b>184</b>
<b>LESSON 2. Combining Forms Denoting Methods of Medical Examination, Size and Amount.....</b>	<b>192</b>
<b>LESSON 3. Combining Forms Denoting Surgical Treatment.....</b>	<b>199</b>
<b>LESSON 4. Combining Forms Denoting Inflammations, Tumors, Diseases .....</b>	<b>206</b>
<b>LESSON 5. Combining Forms Denoting Sense and Speech Organs Disorders, Pathological Conditions .....</b>	<b>213</b>
<b>LESSON 6. Combining Forms Denoting Methods of Treatment, Medical Sciences.....</b>	<b>219</b>
Latin-English Dictionary .....	227
English-Latin Dictionary.....	257

## Introduction

“Invia est in medicina via sine lingua Latina” – The way without Latin is impassable in medicine.

The “Latin Language” course at the Medical Faculty presents a study of present-day medical terminology of Latin and Greek origin. The Medical Terminology course is an integral part of the university program for health professionals training.

**Medical terminology** is a special vocabulary used by health professionals for describing the human body and associated conditions and processes, and for effective communication. Medical terminology is based mainly on the Latin and Greek languages, and is uniform throughout the world. The medical vocabulary is vast (there are more than half a million medical terms in each language), and it is always expanding.

### **The Role of the Latin and Greek Languages.**

The Latin language (*Lingua Latina*) was the language spoken by inhabitants of ancient Rome and other people of Latium (Latium was the region of central western Italy in which the city of Rome was founded and grew to be the capital of the Roman Empire). The language originated in around the 8<sup>th</sup> century BC. Latin reached its prosperity from 75 BC to 175 AD, as the Roman Empire was found and the Romans conquered most parts of Europe and Africa.

When the Roman Empire collapsed in the 5<sup>th</sup> century AD, the language diverged into different kinds of the Romance Languages that are spoken today in different areas, including: French, Italian, Spanish, Romanian, Portuguese *etc.* Though the language died as a daily spoken language, it has never stopped playing important parts in the scholar world. For example, at medical faculties in the European countries some disciplines were taught in Latin until the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century. Despite the retreat of Latin from the medical terminology in the 20<sup>th</sup> century, the national medical terminologies were created with the use of international Latin-Greek elements.

Greek and Latin represent the traditional language material to be used in **English medical terminology**. English **medical terminology** developed from medieval Latin terminology, which had absorbed a developed Greek terminology. Greek medicine migrated to Rome at an early date, and many Latin terms crept into its terminology. Only a few medical terms came from the oldest developmental period of the English language (from Anglo-Saxon). It is generally said that the English medical terminology cannot at all be mastered without the knowledge of basic Latin.

### **Structure of the Latin Language course.**

The university “Latin Language” course is a two-semester course that introduces students to the Latin and Greek medical terms commonly used in Medicine. The aim of the two-semester course is to achieve an active command of basic

grammatical phenomena and rules with a special stress on the system of the language and on the specific character of medical terminology, and that to the extent that enables an active use of Latin and Greek medical terms.

This student manual covers three main branches of the present-day medical terminology (“educational modules” in this manual):

- 1. Anatomical Terminology:** The anatomical terminology is a base for medical communication. Its international version remains Latin in the full extent. For anatomical terms, an international lexicon has been adopted. It is the “Terminologia Anatomica” released in 1998 by the Federative Committee on Anatomical Terminology. *Terminologia Anatomica* contains terms for about 7,500 gross anatomical structures. The six previous editions were called the “Nomina Anatomica”, first published in 1955. The first official Latin anatomical nomenclature was introduced at a congress of anatomists in Basle in 1895. It is said in the preface of *Terminologia Anatomica*: “Anatomical terminology is the foundation of medical terminology and it is important that doctors and scientists throughout the world use the same name for each structure”.
- 2. Pharmaceutical Terminology:** The pharmaceutical terminology is an area where Latin has been traditionally used. In the pharmaceutical terminology Latin has remained a functioning means of international communication, guaranteed by the European Pharmacopoeia, released in Latin in 1996. Even though national languages have been favored in prescriptions in some of the countries of the European Union, in many other countries Latin has continued to be preferred and the standard international nomenclature of drugs is based on the Latin language. The Latin version of the pharmacopoeia has been used in Germany, Switzerland, Yugoslavia, Russia, Belarus, Ukraine, Japan, China, etc. For prescribing medications in these countries Latin is used. In order to master this field of medicine a doctor must acquire a specific pharmaceutical vocabulary and learn the structure and prescription-writing rules.
- 3. Clinical Terminology:** The clinical terminology is a very important element of the medical professionals training. There are over 60,000 clinical terms in the present-day medical language. Using the clinical terminology a doctor uses over 70% terms of Greek/Latin origin. Learning the clinical terminology you should realize that it is in many ways like learning a foreign language. Like a foreign language, medical terms often sound strange and confusing. As a result of being unable to understand the words, they will have very little meaning to you. But it is wrong to assume that only highly educated people can use and understand them. Medical terms sound like a foreign language because the vast majority of them are of Greek and Latin origin. So, for example, the word "gastrectomy" is of a Greek origin and means “the total removal of the stomach”. “Gastrectomy” comes from the Greek word "gaster" which means "stomach" and the Greek word "ectome", which means "cut out". The main reason for using these words is that medical terms provide one word that describes something that would otherwise take many words to say. For example, it is quicker to say

"gastrectomy" than to say "the total removal of the stomach ". You will be able to learn medical terms by understanding the origins of these words in Latin and Greek.

### **General expected outcomes.**

Upon completion of this course, the student will be able to:

1. pronounce correctly Latin words and word combinations;
2. place stress on the correct syllable in a word;
3. know elements of the Latin grammar (noun and adjective in singular and plural, in Nominative and Genitive) which are required for using anatomical, pharmaceutical and clinical terms;
4. know the basic anatomical, pharmaceutical and clinical vocabulary;
5. translate anatomical, pharmaceutical and clinical terms from Latin into English and from English into Latin;
6. know basic concepts used in pharmacology;
7. know structure and basic concepts of prescription-writing;
8. know basic Latin and Greek component elements of medication names;
9. know about 300 Latin and Greek component elements used in clinical terminology;
10. understand and form clinical terms on the basis of known Latin and Greek component elements.

### **Method of Evaluation**

The Belarusian universities use *a ten-point grading* scale. The students' performance in "Latin" is evaluated on the basis of the ten-point grading scale in every lesson, i.e. students receive a grade for each lesson, either for the oral task or for the written test. At the end of each educational module (anatomical, pharmaceutical and clinical terminologies) students have a Final Test:

- Final Test on "Anatomical Terminology" (45 minutes);
- Final Test on "Pharmaceutical Terminology" (45 minutes);
- Final Test on "Clinical Terminology" (45 minutes).

Final Tests are administered in written form. On the basis of academic achievements during the term and a grade for the Final Test students receive a cumulative average grade for each educational module.

The grades for the three educational modules are taken into account during the final examination at the end of the entire course. At the end of the course there is a Written Examination paper (45 minutes). Your Final Grade for the entire course will come from the average grades for all the educational modules and the grade for the written examination paper.

# Anatomical Terms

**Latin Alphabet  
Pronunciation  
of Latin  
Vowels and  
Consonants**

**Lesson  
1**

For example, in the so-called “Anglo-Saxon pronunciation system” Latin words in common use in English are generally fully assimilated into the English sound system, with little to mark them as foreign, for example, *cranium*, *saliva* [ˈkreɪniəm] [səˈlaɪvə]. Such a Latin pronunciation is definitely incorrect and should be prevented. In this tutorial such a pronunciation will not be covered.

We should use the so-called *Classical Roman Pronunciation* of Latin, which aims to represent approximately the pronunciation of classical times. This sound system is commonly used in Europe.

## 1.2 LATIN ALPHABET

The Latin alphabet, also called the Roman alphabet, includes all the letters of the English alphabet, except for *w*. It contains 25 letters, six vowels and nineteen consonants. You should become familiar with the Latin alphabet that follows:

Letter	Name	Pronunciation	Examples
<b>A a</b>	a	a	as in “ <b>under</b> ”: <i>cáput</i> (head)
<b>B b</b>	be	b	as in “ <b>bath</b> ”: <i>bráchium</i> (shoulder)
<b>C c</b>	tse	ts k	as in “ <b>plants</b> ”: <i>cérvix</i> (neck) as in “ <b>coner</b> ”: <i>cósta</i> (rib), <i>crísta</i> (crest)
<b>D d</b>	de	d	as in “ <b>danger</b> ”: <i>déxter</i> (right)
<b>E e</b>	e	e	as in “ <b>met</b> ”: <i>vértebra</i>
<b>F f</b>	ef	f	as in “ <b>fast</b> ”: <i>fácies</i> (surface, face)
<b>G g</b>	ge	g	as in “ <b>get</b> ”: <i>gáster</i> (stomach)
<b>H h</b>	ha	h (english like)	as in “ <b>hand</b> ”: <i>hómo</i> (man)
<b>I i</b>	I	i	as in “ <b>sit</b> ”: <i>vagína</i> (vagina)
<b>J j</b>	yot	(j)	as in “ <b>yes</b> ”: <i>máyor</i> (large)
<b>K k</b>	ka	k	as in “ <b>key</b> ”: <i>skéleton</i>
<b>L l</b>	el	l	as in “ <b>life</b> ”: <i>lábium</i> (lip)
<b>M m</b>	em	m	as in “ <b>medical</b> ”: <i>meátus</i> (passage)
<b>N n</b>	en	n	as in “ <b>night</b> ”: <i>násus</i> (nose)
<b>O o</b>	o	o	as in “ <b>spot</b> ”: <i>córpus</i> (body)
<b>P p</b>	pe	p	as in “ <b>palmer</b> ”: <i>pálpebra</i> (eyelid)
<b>Q q</b>	ku	k	as in “ <b>quite</b> ”: <i>quádriceps</i> (four-headed)

<b>R r</b>	er	r	as in “ <b>rend</b> ”: ren (kidney)
<b>S s</b>	es	s z	as in “ <b>solve</b> ”: solútio (solution) as in “ <b>nose</b> ”: incisúra (slit or notch)
<b>T t</b>	te	t	as in “ <b>ten</b> ”: tráctus (tract)
<b>U u</b>	u	u	as in “ <b>put</b> ”: púlmo (lung)
<b>V v</b>	ve	v	as in “ <b>van</b> ”: válva (valve)
<b>X x</b>	iks	ks	as in “ <b>next</b> ”: rádix (root)
<b>Y y</b>	ypsilon (igrek)	i	as in “ <b>crystal</b> ”: týmpanum (drum)
<b>Z z</b>	zeta	z	as in “ <b>zero</b> ”: zygóma (check- bone)

There are 6 vowels: **a, e, i, o, u, y** and 19 consonants: **b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z**.

Latin is a “phonetic language”, that is the words sound exactly how they are written. Pronouncing Latin is much easier than English. Every letter in a word is sounded, e.g. *breve*, don’t say [brɪ:v]. Prevent pronouncing Latin words like your native language.

### 1.3 RULES FOR PRONOUNCING LATIN VOWELS

Vowels	Pronunciation, examples
<b>a</b>	pronounced as in English <i>father</i> , never pronounce it as [eɪ], [æ] or [ə], no matter where “a” is present in a word / e.g. cáput (head)
<b>o</b>	pronounced as in English <i>hot</i> , never pronounce it as [əu], no matter where “o” is present in a word / e.g. córpus (body)
<b>e</b>	pronounced as in English <i>then</i> , never pronounce it as [ɪ:], no matter where “e” is present in a word / e.g. vértebra
<b>u</b>	pronounced as in English <i>full</i> , never pronounce it as [ju:] or [ʌ], no matter where “u” is present in a word / e.g. púlmo (lung)
<b>i</b>	pronounced as in English <i>pin</i> , never pronounce it as [aɪ], no matter where “i” is present in a word / e.g. vagína (vagina)
<b>y</b>	“y” is pronounced exactly as “i” / e.g. týmpanum (drum)

## 1.4 RULES FOR PRONOUNCING LATIN CONSONANTS

The Latin consonants are pronounced just like English consonants (see under “Latin alphabet”), except for **c, g, j, l, s, x** and **z**.

<b>c</b>	Before <u>e</u> , <u>i</u> , <u>y</u> , <u>ae</u> , <u>oe</u> it is pronounced as [ts]. It is similar to the <u>ts</u> of English <b>plants</b> : <b>cérvix</b> [tserviks] - neck: <b>cýstis</b> [tsistis] - bladder; <b>caécum</b> [tsekum] - cecum.
<b>c</b>	Before <u>a</u> , <u>o</u> , <u>u</u> , before consonants and at the end of a word it is pronounced as [k]: <b>cáput</b> – head: <b>cósta</b> – rib; <b>cutis</b> – skin; <b>crísta</b> – crest; <b>lac</b> – milk.
<b>g</b>	is always pronounced as [g] in <b>give, get, go</b> and never as [dʒ] in English <i>gem</i> .
<b>h</b>	is always pronounced as [h] in English <b>hard</b> .
<b>j</b>	is always pronounced as [j] in <b>yes, you, young</b> and never as [dʒ] in English <i>just</i>
<b>l</b>	is always palatalized and soft as in <b>live, level</b> .
<b>s</b>	Between two vowels or between a vowel and the voiced consonant <u>m</u> or <u>n</u> it is pronounced as [z] in <b>nose, rose</b> , but before vowels, consonants and at the end of a word it is pronounced as [s] in <b>solve, slow, maps</b> . The double –s is pronounced as [s].
<b>x</b>	Is pronounced as [ks] in <b>next, larynx</b> , but sometimes between vowels it is pronounced as [gz] in <b>examination, example</b> .
<b>z</b>	In Greek words it is always pronounced as [z] in <b>zero, zone</b> , but in words of other origin such as <b>Zíncum</b> (zinc), <b>influéntia</b> (grippe) it is pronounced as /ts/.
	One of the main differences between English and Latin consonants is that in Latin <u>p</u> , <u>t</u> , <u>k</u> are not aspirated (i.e. there is no puff of breath after them) as in English. Another difference is that <b>“j”</b> is always palatalized, or soft.

## 1.5 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. How many letters are there in the Latin alphabet? Name all the letters.
2. Name vowel and consonant letters.
3. How are the Latin vowels pronounced?
4. How are the Latin consonants pronounced?

5. What distinctive features does the pronunciation of the letters **L, H, C, S, X, Z** have?

## 1.6 HOMEWORK

1. Learn the pronunciation of the Latin vowels and consonants.
2. Learn the Vocabulary of this Lesson.
3. Practice Exercises No. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 – orally.

## 1.7 VOCABULARY

1. ála, ae f	- wing
2. cápsula, ae f	- capsule
3. chórda, ae f	- cord <i>or</i> sinew
4. cóchlea, ae f	- cochlea (spiral tube) (from <i>snail</i> )
5. colúmna, ae f	- column
6. cóncha, ae f	- concha ( <i>a shell-shaped structure</i> )
7. cósta, ae f	- rib
8. crísta, ae f	- crest
9. fáscia, ae f	- fascia ( <i>a band of fibrous tissue</i> )
10. fibula, ae f	- splint-bone
11. fóssa, ae f	- trench ( <i>a hollow or depressed area</i> )
12. fóvea, ae f	- pit ( <i>small pit or depression</i> )
13. glándula, ae f	- gland
14. incisúra, ae f	- incisure, notch
15. mandíbula, ae f	- lower jaw
16. maxílla, ae f	- upper jaw
17. scápula, ae f	- shoulder-blade
18. sutúra, ae f	- suture, stitch
19. válvula, ae f	- valve
20. vértebra, ae f	- vertebra, spinal bone

## 1.7 EXERCISES

### Exercise 1. *Read anatomical terms as follows:*

Vértebra (spinal bone), dórsum (back), distális (distal), intérnus (internal), médius (middle), séptum (septum), abdómen (abdomen), aórta (aorta), apertúra (opening), nérvus (nerve), artéria (artery), fémur (femur, thigh), brévis (brevis,

short), meátus (meatus), fíbra (fiber), forámen (foramen, opening), rotúndus (round), ovális (oval), fúndus (fundus), ligaméntum (ligament), mánus (hand), mémbrum (limb), nódus (node), órbita (orbit), uterínus (uterine), vómer (vomer), orbitális (orbital), parietális (parietal).

**Exercise 2. Read the following aloud. Pay special attention to l:**

Ála (wing), álbus (white), alvéolus (alveole), úlna (ulna), úvula (uvula), pélvis (pelvis), búlbus (bulb), fílum (filum), glándula (gland), fíbula (fibula), lábium laterále (lateral lip), lámína (lamina), lens (lens), lóbulus (lobule), lúnula (lunule), medúlla oblongáta (medulla oblongata), pálma (palm), papílla (papilla), púlmo (lung), púlvis (powder), tabuléta (tablet), semilunáris (semilunar).

**Exercise 3. Read the following aloud. Pay special attention to c and cc:**

- a) Cóllum (neck), cáput (head), trúncus (trunk, body), árcus (arch), buccális (buccal), cávum cránii (cranial cavity), colúmna (column), córnea (cornea), crísta (crest), dúctus (duct), córnú (corn), plíca (fold), cardíacus (cardiac), súccus (juice), cónicus (conical), secretórius (secretory), médicus (physician), clavícula (collar bone, clavicle), oculáris (ocular);
- b) menísci (meniscuses), cérebrum (brain), fácies (face), célula (cell), céntrum (centre), cystis (bladder), cylínder (cylinder), fáschia (fascia), nutrícus (nutritious), placéнта (placenta), scéleton (skeleton), cýtus (cell), acetábulum (acetabulum);
- c) súlci paracólici (sulci paracolic), os coccygis (pelvic bone), occipitális (occipital), trúncus celíacus (celiac trunk), músculi coccygéi (coccygeal muscle), ócciput (back of head, occiput).

**Exercise 4. Read the following aloud. Pay special attention to i and j:**

Máior (big), juguláris (jugular), cílium (eyelash), crínis (hair), fólium (leaf), inférior (inferior), jejúnus (jejunum), iáter (зpeч.) (physician), íris (iris), junctúra (junction), júgulum (throat), urinárius (urinary), rádii (rays), tráctus iliotibiális (iliotibial tract), diffícilis (difficult), iódum (зpeч.) (iodine), Convallária majális (lilly of the valley), júctus (conjugated), júvans (ancillary).

**Exercise 5. Read the following aloud. Pay special attention to g and h:**

- a) Gingíva (gum), glándula (gland), gástricus (gastric), glómus (glome), gállus (gallus, “cock”), márgo (margin), génu (knee);
- b) hépar (liver), hílus (hilus), hyoídeus (sublingual), húmerus (humeral bone), hiátus (hiatus), hómo (human being), húmor (moisture), hypodérma (subcutaneous fat), os hamátum (hamate bone), hérba (herb), hérnia (hernia), hirúdo (leech), alcohólicus (alcoholic).

**Exercise 6. Read the following aloud. Pay special attention to s and ss:**

- a) Dorsális (dorsal), pes (foot), sùlcus (furrow), transversus (transversal), meniscus (meniscus), commissúra (commissure), compréssor (compressor), crus (leg), impréssio gástrica (gastric impression), fissúra (fissure), crássum (large intestine), ósseus (bony);
- b) incisúra (notch), mesentérium (mesentery), mucósa (mucous membrane), vása vasórum (vasa vasorum), infúsum (infusion);
- c) adipósus (adipose), serósus (serous), globósus (globular), dens incisívus (incisor), pars spongiósa (spongiose part), procéssus accessórius (accessory process), fóssa dúctus venósi (fossa of venous duct), segméntum basále (basal segment), tuberósitas (tuberosity), compósitus (complicated), násus (nose), cavernósus (cavernous);
- d) prísmá (греч.) (prism), tonsílla (tonsil), karyoplásma (karyoplasm), cytoplásma (cytoplasm), platýsma (platysma, subcutaneous muscle of the neck), organísmus (греч.) (organism).

**Exercise 7. Read the following aloud. Pay special attention to y:**

Amýgdala (tonsil), pterygoídeus (wing-shaped), týmpanum (tympanum), cóndylus (condyle), dáctylus (finger), embryológia (embryology), endomýsium (endomysium), gýrus (convolution), pýramis (pyramid), myológia (myology), styloídeus (styloid), pars pylórica (pyloric part), spóndylos (vertebra), crystallisátus (crystal), cytológia (cytology), cályces (calyces), hystéricus (hysterical).

**Exercise 8. Read the following aloud. Pay special attention to x and z:**

- a) Áxis (axis), déxter (right), ápex (tip, apex), axílla (axilla), máximus (largest), lárýnx (larynx), córtex (cortex), extrémítás (extremity), índex (index), maxílla (upper jaw, maxilla), pléxus (plexus), ptéryx (wing), rádix (root, radix), sálpinx (uterine tube, salpinx), símplex (simple), hélix (helix), cóxa (thigh, hip);
- b) os trapéziúm (trapezoid bone), zygomáticus (zygomatic), horizontális (horizontal), ázygos (azygos, unpaired), vénae zygomáticae (zygomatic veins), strátum zonále (zonal layer), zonuláris (zonular), zoológia (zoology), Zíncum (zinc), zóster (zona), zymóticus (yeasty), zýma (yeast).

**Pronunciation  
of Diphthongs and  
Letter  
Combinations**

**Lesson  
2**

**Nota Bene** (*take special note*): Two dots placed over the letter **e** indicate that **ae** or **oe** are treated not as diphthongs and their letters denote different sounds:

- **áær** [aer] (air); **díploë** ['diploe] (spongy substance), **dýspnoë** ['dispnoe] (breathlessness)

<b>au</b>	This combination of vowels forms one syllable. But both vowels must be distinctly heard, e.g. <i>auris</i> ['auris] (ear). The first vowel must be strongly stressed.
<b>eu</b>	This combination of vowels forms one syllable. But both vowels must be distinctly heard, e.g. <i>seu</i> ['seu] (or). The first vowel must be strongly stressed.

## 2.2 RULES FOR PRONOUNCING LETTER COMBINATIONS

These letter combinations are pronounced as follows:

<b>ngu</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• is pronounced as [ngv] when followed by a vowel, e.g. <b>língua</b> ['lingva] (tongue, language);</li> <li>• is pronounced as [ngu] when followed by a consonant, e.g. <b>ángulus</b> ['angulus] (angle)</li> </ul>
<b>qu</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• is pronounced as [kv] <b>áqua</b> ['akva] (water), <b>squama</b> ['skvama] (scales)</li> </ul>
<b>ti</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• is pronounced as [tsi] when followed by a vowel and preceded by any letter, except for <b>s, t, x</b>, e.g. <b>spátium</b> ['spatsium] (space); <b>articulátio</b> [artiku'latsio] (joint), but <b>ostium</b> ['ostium] (opening);</li> <li>• is pronounced as [ti] before consonants, after <b>s,t,x</b>, e.g. <b>tíbia</b> ['tibia] (shinbone).</li> </ul>

A *digraph* is a group of two consonants representing one sound.

<b>ch</b>	is pronounced as [h]: <b>núcha</b> [nuha] (neck, posterior region of neck), <b>ch</b> is never pronounced as [tʃ] or [k]!
<b>ph</b>	is pronounced as English [f] in <i>photo</i> , e.g. <b>ráphe</b> ['rafe] (suture), <b>pharynx</b> ['farinks] (gullet)

<b>rh</b>	is pronounced as [r], e.g. <b>rhéxis</b> [reksis] (rupture)
<b>th</b>	is pronounced as [t], e.g. <b>thórax</b> ['toraks] (chest), never pronounce it as [θ] in English <i>think!</i>

## 2.3 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. What is “diphthong”?
2. What is “digraph”?
3. How many diphthongs are there in Latin? How are they pronounced?
4. How are pronounced the letter combinations **qu, ngu, ti**? Give examples.
5. How are pronounced the letter combinations **ch, ph, th, rh**? Give examples.

## 2.4 HOMEWORK

1. Learn the pronunciation of the Latin diphthongs and letter combinations.
2. Learn the Vocabulary of this Lesson.
3. Practice Exercises No. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5– orally.

## 2.5 VOCABULARY

- |                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| 1. aórta, ae f          | - aorta  |
| 2. apertúra, ae f       | - opening  |
| 3. artéria, ae f        | - artery   |
| 4. búrsa, ae f          | - sac <i>or</i> saclike cavity ( <i>fluid-filled</i> ) |
| 5. flexúra, ae f        | - flexure  |
| 6. gingíva, ae f        | - gum  |
| 7. lámína, ae f         | - plate, layer   |
| 8. línea, ae f          | - line   |
| 9. língua, ae f         | - tongue   |
| 10. órbita, ae f        | - orbit  |
| 11. pórta, ae f         | - entrance <i>or</i> gateway                           |
| 12. protuberántia, ae f | - protuberance, prominence                             |
| 13. sélla, ae f         | - saddle ( <i>saddle-shaped depression</i> )           |
| 14. spína, ae f         | - spine  |
| 15. tíbia, ae f         | - shinbone   |

16.trachéa, ae f	- windpipe
17.túnica, ae f	- tunic <i>or</i> coat
18.vagína, ae f	- vagina ( <i>any sheath or sheathlike structure</i> )
19.véna, ae f	- vein

## 2.6 EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Read the following aloud. Pay special attention to ae, oe, au, eu:**

- Peronáeus (peroneal, fibular), caerúleus (dark blue), háema (blood), incisúrae (notches), líneae transversae (transverse lines), máculae (macules, spots), límbus córneae (corneal limbus), rúgae (rugae), vénae cávae (vena cava), spínae (spines), régio glutáea (gluteal region), túnica vesícae féllae (coat of the gallbladder), aegrótus (ill), emplástrum adhaesívum (adhesive, sticking plaster), dens praemoláris (premolar tooth);
- oedéma (oedema), roentgenográmma (roentgenogram), fóetidus (fetid, stinking), oecológia (ecology), amóeba (ameba);
- áuris (ear), fáuces (fauces), autonómicus (autonomous, independen), cáuda (tail, cauda), háustrum (dilatation), áuctor (author), cáusa (cause), auriculáris (ear; aural);
- aponeurósis (aponeurosis), paraneurális (paraneural), neuroblástus (neuroblast), pleurális (pleural), aneurýsma (aneurysm), pléura (pleura), Eucalýptus (eucalyptus), neuróma (neuroma), os pneumáticum (pneumatized bone), néuter (neuter (gender));
- áær (air), aërosólum (aerosol, spray), uropoëticus (urinific, uriniparous), poëta (creator; founder), liniméntum Áloës (liniment of aloe).

**Exercise 2. Read the following aloud. Pay special attention to qu and ngu:**

- Aquaedúctus (aqueduct), oblíquus (oblique), líquor (liquor, liquid), lóbus quadrátus hépatis (quadrate lobe of liver), squamósus (squamous, scaly), os tríquetrum (triquetral (triangular) bone), pars squamósa (squamous part), squáma (squama), quádriceps (quadriceps), quínque (five), áqua (water), acquisítus (acquired);
- sánguifer (blood), únguis (nail, unguis), unguális (nail, unguinal), unguéntum (ointment), linguális (lingual), ínguen (groin), inguinális (inguinal), languitúdo (flaccidity, flabbiness);
- angulus (angle), cingulum (cingulum), singuláris (single), úngula (hoof, unguis).

**Exercise 3. Read the following aloud. Pay special attention to ti:**

- a) Ópticus (optic, visual), palatínus (palatine), cartilágo (cartilage), tibia (shinbone, tibia), montícus (hillock), acústicus (auditory), rétina (retina), caróticus (carotic), táctilis (tactile), fontícus (fontanelle), pectinátus (pectineal);
- b) abdúctio (abduction), articulátio (joint, articulation), bifurcátio (bifurcation), eminéntia (eminence), excavátio (depression, pouch), inclinátio (inclination), parodontium (parodentium, periodontium), protuberántia (protuberance), respirátio (respiration), séctio (section), spátium (space), substántia (substance), terminatiónes (terminals, endings), tértius (third), solúctio (solution), distántia (distance);
- c) míxtio (mixing), suggéstio (suggestion), digéctio (digestion), óstium (orifice), angústia (constriction), combústio (burn).

**Exercise 4. Read the following aloud. Pay special attention to ch, ph, th, rh:**

- a) Arachnoídeus (arachnoidal), bráchium (arm, brachium), cóncha (concha), trachéa et brónchi (trachea and bronchi), hypochóndrium (hypochondrium), ischiádicus (ischiodic, sciatic), órchis (testicle, orchis), chirúrgicus (surgical), núcha (nucha), parénchyma (parenchyma), cóchlea (cochlea), synchondrósis (synchondrosis), trochánter (trochanter), chórda (cord, chorda), stómachus (stomach), chárta (paper);
- b) encéphalon (brain), oesóphagus (esophagus), pháryn timer (pharynx), phálanx (phalanx), diaphrágma (diaphragm), hemisphérium (hemisphere), hypóphysis (hypophysis), nódus lympháticus (lymphatic node), sphenoidális (wedge-shaped, sphenoidal), saphénus (subcutaneous), sphíncter (sphincter), sýmphysis (symphysis);
- c) cánthus (angle of eye), glándula thyreoídea (thyroid gland), ethmoidális (ethmoid), thórax (thorax), endothélium (endothelium), hypothálamus (hypothalamus), arthron (joint, articulation), labyrínthus (labyrinth), thorácicus (thoracic), synarthrósis (synarthrosis), Menthólum (menthol), ophthálmicus (ophthalmic), isthmus (isthmus);
- d) rhombencéphalon (rhombencephalon), karyorrhéxis (breakdown of cell nucleus), rheumatísmus (rheumatism), rháphe (suture, raphe), rinális (nasal), rhizóma (rhizome).

**Exercise 5. Read the following aloud. Pay special attention to the correct pronunciation:**

Thorácicus (pectoral, thoracic), scaphoídeus (scaphoid, boat-shaped), dysphasía (dysphasia), ethmoidális (ethmoid), cryotherápia (frigotherapy, cryotherapy), hypertróphicus (hypertrophic), gastrorrhagía (hemorrhage from stomach), thyreoídeus (thyroid), pneumothórax (pneumothorax), haemophilía (hemophilia), phlebographía (phlebography, venography), hypaesthesía

(hypoesthesia), epíphysis (epiphysis), metathálamus (metathalamus), labyrinthus (labyrinth), encéphalon (brain), cochleáris (cochlear), thanatophobía (thanatophobia), brónchus (bronchus), pyothórax (pyothorax), myasthenía (myasthenia), brachiális (humeral, brachial), oesóphagus (esophagus), logopathía (logopathy), thýmus (thymus), cardiotherapía (cardiotherapy), cirrhósis (cirrhosis), emphyséma (emphysema), atrichía (atrachia), íschius (ischium, ischial bone).

**Placement  
of Stress  
in Latin**

**Lesson  
3**

2. In words of three or more syllables, the stress is on the **penultimate** syllable (that is, the second to last syllable) if this is “long”. This is the **usual** stress position in Latin.
3. In words of three or more syllables, the stress is on the **antepenultimate** syllable (that is, the third to last syllable) if the penultimate syllable is “short”.
4. The stress is never on the last syllable as in French.

### 3.2 PLACEMENT OF STRESS IN LATIN WORDS

To stress correctly a Latin word you should:

1. separate a word into *syllables*

A **syllable** is a unit of a word containing a vowel or a diphthong. The separation into syllables is usually marked by a hyphen: **ar-ti-ku-la-ti-o**, **ar-te-ri-a**, **ver-te-brae**, **oe-so-pha-gus**;

2. find the second to last syllable,
3. determine whether the penultimate (the second to last) syllable is “long” or “short”. If the penultimate syllable is “long”, the stress is placed on this syllable. If the penultimate syllable is “short”, the stress is placed on the third to last syllable.

The basic rules when the penultimate syllable is “long” / “short”:

	Rules	Examples
<b>The penultimate (the second to last) syllable is “long”</b>	1. if it contains a <b>diphthong</b> such as <b>ae, oe</b>	di- <b>ae</b> - ta gan- <b>grae</b> - na
	2. if a vowel of this syllable is followed by <b>two or more consonants</b> or letters «x»; «z»	li- ga- men- <b>tum</b> se- me- <b>stris</b> ref- le- <b>xus</b> ory- <b>za</b>
	3. if it contains such <b>suffixes</b> as: <b>-al-, -ar-, -at-, -in-, -ur-, -os-</b> .	me-di- <b>a-</b> lis di-gi- <b>ta-</b> tus fib- <b>ro-</b> sus
<b>The penultimate (the second to last) syllable is “short”</b>	1. if its <b>vowel</b> is followed by another <b>vowel</b>	ar- te- <b>ri- a</b> su- pe- <b>ri- or</b>
	2. if its vowel is followed by such letter combinations as: <b>br, pl, tr</b>	ver- te- <b>bra</b> qua- dru- <b>plex</b> tri- que- <b>trus</b>
	3. if its vowel is followed by diagraphs <b>ch, ph, th, rh</b> .	sto- ma- <b>chus</b> mo- no- li- <b>thus</b>
	4. if it contains such suffixes as: <b>-ic-, -ol-, -ul-, -cul-</b> .	tho- ra- <b>ci-</b> cus fo- ve- <b>o-</b> la lin- <b>gu-</b> la

### 3.3 GRAPHICALLY SIGNED STRESS

If the word cannot be stressed according to any stress rule, you should consult a dictionary.

Both stressed and unstressed syllables are graphically signed with the special marks. Stressed syllables are graphically signed by a **stroke** (˘):

**E.g., pylōrus** (*the lower part of the stomach*).

Unstressed syllables are indicated in the dictionary by a **circumflex** (˘) on the vowel.

**E.g., skelēton**

**If you are not sure how to stress a word, just look it up in a dictionary.**

### 3.4 STRESS IN WORDS OF GREEK ORIGIN

The medical terms of Greek origin are often stressed not according to the stress rules:

1. In Greek clinical terms with the ending - **ia** the penultimate syllable is always stressed (**hypertonia**, **stomatoscopia**, **glossalgia**). Exeptions – clinical terms ending with **-lógia** и **-malácia**, where the third to last syllable is stressed (**biológia**).
2. Adjectives ending with **-eus** (**laryngeus**, **carpeus**).
3. The suffix **-ideus** is stressed on the the third to last syllable (**styloideus**, **mastoideus**).

### 3.5 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. What is stress in linguistics?
2. What syllable is stressed in Latin words consisting of two syllables?
3. What syllables are stressed in Latin words consisting of three ore more syllables?
4. What syllable is stressed if the penultimate syllable is “long”?
5. What syllable is stressed if the penultimate syllable is “short”?
6. What suffixes are always stressed, and what suffixes are never stressed?
7. What specific features do stress rules for medical terms of Greek origin have?

### 3.6 HOMEWORK

1. Learn rules of stress placement in Latin words.
2. Learn the Vocabulary of this Lesson.
3. Practice Exercises No. 2, 3, 4, 5– orally.

### 3.7 VOCABULARY

#### Masculine

- |                      |                                     |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. angŭlus, i m      | - angle                             |
| 2. canalicŭlus, i m  | - channel <i>or</i> tubular passage |
| 3. fundus, i m       | - bottom <i>or</i> base             |
| 4. muscŭlus, i m     | - muscle                            |
| 5. nasus, i m        | - nose                              |
| 6. nucleus, i m      | - nucleus                           |
| 7. ocŭlus, i m       | - eye                               |
| 8. radius, i m       | - radial bone                       |
| 9. sulcus, i m       | - furrow                            |
| 10. utĕrus, i m      | - uterus, womb                      |
| 11. ventricŭlus, i m | - ventricle, stomach                |

#### Neuter

- |                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| 12. brachium, i n   | - arm ( <i>part of the arm between the shoulder and the elbow</i> ) |
| 13. collum, i n     | - neck <i>or</i> necklike part                                      |
| 14. cranium, i n    | - skull   |
| 15. dorsum, i n     | - back  |
| 16. membrum, i n    | - limb  |
| 17. palātum, i n    | - palate  |
| 18. septum, i n     | - partition   |
| 19. stratum, i n    | - layer   |
| 19. tubercŭlum, i n | - tubercle  |

### 3.8 EXERCISES

#### Exercise 1. *Stress the words consisting of two syllables:*

Pelvis (pelvis), fornix (fornix), apex (apex), squama (squama, “scales”), auris (ear), cauda (tail, cauda), crista (crest, ridge), sternum (breastbone, sternum),

membrum (limb, extremity), cavum (cave), margo (border, margin), basis (base), phalanx (phalanx), lingua (tongue), dorsum (back), plica (fold), isthmus (isthmus), arcus (arch), ductus (duct), vasa (vessels), radix (root), venter (belly), collum (neck), pharynx (pharynx), cortex (cortex), sanguis (blood).

**Exercise 2. Read aloud, pay attention to the graphically signed syllables:**

- a) Pylōrus (pylorus), abdōmen (abdomen), cartilāgo (cartilage), carōtis (carotid artery), dilatātor (dilatator), fibrōma (fibroma), duodēnum (duodenum), corōna (crown, corona), audītus (hearing, audition), oedēma (edema), valetūdo (health), parōtis (parotid gland), systēma (system), palātum (palate);
- b) lacrima (tear), lamīna (plate, lamina), liquīdus (liquid, fluid), acīdum (acid), minīmus (smallest), polŷpus (polyp), pyrāmis (pyramid), utērus (uterus), occīput (occiput, back of head), tuberositas (tuberosity), retīna (retina), humērus (humerus, humeral bone), oesophāgus (esophagus).

**Exercise 3. Stress the following words observing the rules of Latin word-stressing:**

- a) Glutaeus (gluteal), gangraena (gangrene), diaeta (diet), amoeba (ameba), peronaeus (fibular), Althaea (marsh-mallow), Crataegus (hawthorn), peritoneum (peritoneum), barotrauma (barotrauma);
- b) cerebellum (cerebellum), papilla (nipple; papilla), labyrinthus (labyrinth), reflexus (reflex), trochanter (trochanter), sinister (left), processus (process), ligamentum (ligament), complexus (complex), columna (column);
- c) oblongatus (oblong), spinalis (cerebrospinal), ciliaris (ciliary), ulnaris (ulnar), arteriosus (arterial), pelvinus (pelvic), nasalis (nasal), muscularis (muscular), spongiosus (spongy), incisura (incisure, notch), cribrosus (ethmoidal);
- d) nucleus (nucleus), cranium (skull), spatium (space), ganglion (ganglion), facies (surface), anterior (anterior, front), arteria (artery), inferior (inferior), labium (lip), terminatio (ending, termination), paries (wall), pancreas (pancreas), atrium (atrium);
- e) cerebrum (cerebrum), vertebra (vertebra), palpebra (eyelid), triquetrus (triangular), multiplex (multiple), quadruplex (four-sided);
- f) stomachus (stomach), choledochus (biliary), Bismuthum (bismuth), phlebolithus (phlebolith);
- g) valvula (valve), tuberculum (tubercle), ventriculus (ventricle, stomach), musculus (muscle), glandula (gland), vestibulum (vestibule), pediculus (pedicle), venula (venule), gastricus (gastric), hepaticus (hepatic), foveola (foveola), acusticus (acoustic), ductulus (ductule).

**Exercise 4. Place the stress, read aloud:**

Diaphragma (diaphragm), posterior (posterior, back), temporalis (temporal), intercostalis (intercostal), flexura (flexure), sacralis (sacral), tympanicus (tympanic), horizontalis (horizontal), zygomaticus (zygomatic), paries (wall), bifurcatio (bifurcation), appendix (appendix), recessus (recess), adiposus (adipose),

fatty), aquaeductus (aqueduct), apertura (aperture), accessorius (accessory), supercilium (eyebrow), myocardium (myocardium), ductulus (ductule), buccalis (buccal), tonsilla (tonsil), commissura (commissure), constrictor (constrictor), frenulum (frenulum), ostium (ostium, orifice), periodontium (periodontium), dentes permanentes (permanent teeth), arcus atlantis (arch of atlas), glomerulus (glomerule), fascia (fascia), impressio (impression), cochlea (cochlea), opticus (optic), medulla ossium (spinal marrow), retinaculum (retinaculum), chiasma (chiasm, decussation), extensor (extensor muscle), caudatus (caudate), cysticus (cystic), parietalis (parietal).

**Exercise 5. *Read aloud, pay attention to the graphically signed syllables:***

Forāmen ovāle (foramen ovale, “oval opening”), muscūlus sphincter pylōri (sphincter muscle of pylorus), orgāna ocūli accessoria (accessory organs of eye), skelēton membri (skeleton of extremity), margo superior pyramīdis (superior margin of pyramid), pars optīca retīnae (optic part of retina), pars libēra gingīvae (free part of gum), arteria carōtis (carotid artery), lamīna horizontālis (horizontal plate), arbor vitae cerebelli (arbor vitae cerebelli), canālis palatīnus major (greater palatine canal), retīna (retina), vas lymphaticum superficiāle (superficial lymph vessel).

**Latin Noun.  
Anatomical  
Terms**

**Lesson  
4**

Latin anatomical nomenclature was published (Basle Nomina Anatomica). In the late nineteenth century some 50,000 anatomical terms were in use. The same anatomical structures were described by different names. There was disagreement among anatomists regarding anatomical terminology.

The Basle Nomina Anatomica was followed by seven revisions. The latest international standard of the human anatomical terminology is the *Terminologia Anatomica* created in 1998 by the Federative Committee on Anatomical Terminology. It contains terms for about 7,500 human gross anatomical structures. Apart from the official Latin anatomical terminology, it includes a list of recommended English equivalents.

## 4.2 STRUCTURE OF ANATOMICAL TERMS

There is only a very little Latin grammar necessary to understand and use anatomical terms. The anatomical terms consist only of

- **nouns and adjectives in only two cases in the singular and plural.** The two cases are Nominative (subjective) and Genitive (possessive).

The **anatomical term** is a word or word-combination used to name a definite unit or structure of a human body. Anatomical terms may consist of one, two, three, four and more words (up to 8).

### 1. One-Word Terms

They consist of one noun in the singular or plural:

*Costa (rib), costae (ribs)*

### 2. Two-Word Terms

They may consist of:

- a. two nouns in the singular or plural: *corpus vertēbrae (body of vertebra), corpōra vertebrārum (bodies of vertebrae)*
- b. a noun with an adjective: *vertēbra thoracīca (thoracic vertebra)*

### 3. Three-Word Terms

They may consist of:

- a. three nouns: *ligamentum tubercūli costae (ligament of tubercle of rib)*
- b. a noun and two adjectives: *processus articulāris superior (superior articular process)*
- c. two nouns and an adjective: *sulcus nervi spinālis (furrow of the spinal nerve)*

### 4. Multiword Terms

They may consist of several nouns and adjectives in the singular and plural:

*Facies temporālis alae minōris ossis sphenoidālis (temporal surface of the smaller wing of the sphenoid bone).*

### 4.3 NOUN AND ITS GRAMMATICAL CATEGORIES

The **noun** is one of the basic parts of speech. A noun is a name given to an object or idea. Whatever exists, can be named, and that name is a noun. The nouns answer the questions “who”, “what”. In the Human Anatomy the nouns are used to name the units and structures of the human body, e.g, *vertebra* (spinal bone), *costa* (rib), *cranium* (skull). Latin lacks definite and indefinite articles as in English.

The Latin nouns have grammatical categories as follows:

#### **Gender:**

There are three genders in Latin: *Masculine, Feminine and Neuter*. All nouns in Latin have gender. This is the grammatical gender, i.e. the gender of Latin nouns is determined by endings and not by their biological sex. We cannot answer why is *vertebra* feminine while *cranium* is neuter. It is best to memorize the gender of each noun you learn. Thus, nouns ending in **-a** are feminine: *scapula* (shoulder blade), nouns ending in **-us** are masculine: *musculus* (muscle), nouns ending in **-um** are neuter: *cranium* (skull) etc.

The genders of a noun are indicated in the dictionaries with the letters:

- **m - masculine**
- **f - feminine**
- **n – neuter**

#### **Number:**

The Latin has two numbers – the Singular and Plural. The Singular denotes one object, the Plural, more than one. In English, we can easily see the difference between “plate” and “plates by the ending. Latin is the same. In English the plural is formed by the endings **-s** or **-es**. In Latin the ending of the plural varies according to the gender and declension: *vertebrae* (vertebrae), *nervi* (nerves), *corpōra* (bodies), *facies* (surfaces) etc.

#### **Case:**

Case is defined as the change of the noun form according to its relation to other words. In modern English we can speak about “common case” and “possessive case”. In contrast to English there are six cases in Latin, but only **two cases** are used in the anatomical terminology:

<i>English</i>	<i>Latin and abbreviation</i>
<b>Nominative</b>	<b>Nominatīvus (Nom.)</b>
<b>Genitive</b>	<b>Genitīvus (Gen.)</b>

**Nominative** indicates the subject and answers the questions **who, what.**

**Genitive** indicates the possession and answers the questions **whose, of what.**

## 4.4 DICTIONARY FORM OF A LATIN NOUN

The dictionary form of a Latin noun includes three components:

1. **Nominative singular**
2. **Genitive singular**
3. **Gender (it is usually abbreviated: m, f, n).**

For example: *ala, ae f* (wing);  
*sternum, i n* (breastbone);  
*ductus, us m* (duct).

## 4.5 DECLENSIONS OF A LATIN NOUN

Each Latin noun belongs to a group called a “declension” – all of the nouns in a declension have similar endings. For example, *vertebra*, *aorta*, *ala*, *clavicula* are first declension nouns.

### First declension

Nouns of this declension usually end in **-a** and are typically **feminine**. The Genitive form of the first declension nouns ends in **-ae**.

*E.g., costa, ae f* (rib)

### Second declension

In the Latin anatomical terminology the second declension is a large group of nouns consisting of **masculine** nouns ending in **-us** and **neuter** nouns ending in **-um** and **-on**. The Genitive form of the second declension nouns ends in **-i**.

*E.g., nasus, i m* (nose)

*collum, i n* (neck)

*olecranon, i n* (the bony projection at the elbow).

The ending **-on** have the following anatomical terms:

- *acromion, i n* (acromial process)
- *colon, i n* (large intestine)
- *encephalon, i n* (brain)
- *ganglion, i n* (nerve-knot)
- *olecranon, i n* (the bony projection at the elbow)

### Third declension

The third declension includes nouns of **all three genders** which have **different endings** in Nominative singular and **-is** in Genitive singular.

*E.g., canalis, is m* (canal)

*os, ossis n* (bone)

*regio, onis f* (region)

### Fourth declension

The fourth declension includes masculines which end in **-us**, and the neuters which end with **-u**. The Genitive singular form of these nouns ends in **-us**.

*E.g., arcus, us m (arch)*

*cornu, us n (horn).*

**Nota bene:** In the anatomical terminology there are only two neuters of the 4<sup>th</sup> declension which end in **-u**: *cornu, us n (horn)*, *genu, us n (knee)*.

The fourth-declension noun **manus, us f (hand)** is an exception.

### Fifth declension

The fifth declension is a small group of nouns consisting of feminines ending in **-es**. These nouns have the ending **-ēi** in the genitive singular form.

*E.g.: facies, ēi f (surface, face) - this is the only noun of the fifth declension you meet in the Latin anatomical terminology.*

**Memorize the endings of Nominative and Genitive singular of all declensions:**

Declension	First	Second		Third	Fourth		Fifth
Gender	<b>f</b>	<b>m</b>	<b>n</b>	<b>m f n</b>	<b>m</b>	<b>n</b>	<b>f</b>
Endings Nominative	<b>-a</b>	<b>-us</b>	<b>-um</b> <b>-on</b>	<b>different</b>	<b>-us</b>	<b>-u</b>	<b>-es</b>
Endings Genitive	<b>-ae</b>	<b>-i</b>		<b>-is</b>	<b>-us</b>		<b>-ēi</b>

### **Finding the stem of a noun**

How do we determine what the stem (i.e., the part before the ending that remains the same in each case) is and what the ending is? Knowing endings for the genitive singular, all we need to do is to delete the ending from the word. So, *cristae* loses the **-ae** and becomes *cris-*. That is what is known as stem of the noun.

**E.g.,**

Dictionary form	Genitive	Word stem
<b>crista, ae f</b>	<b>cris – ae</b>	<b>cris –</b>
<b>collum, i n</b>	<b>coll – i</b>	<b>coll –</b>
<b>facies, ēi f</b>	<b>faci – ēi</b>	<b>faci –</b>
<b>pars, partis f</b>	<b>part – is</b>	<b>part –</b>
<b>vomer, ěris m</b>	<b>voměr – is</b>	<b>voměr–</b>
<b>caput, ĩtis n</b>	<b>capĭt – is</b>	<b>capĭt –</b>

## 4.6 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. Which language is the origin of the anatomical terminology?
2. What is difference between “anatomical terminology” and “anatomical nomenclature”?
3. When was the first anatomical nomenclature created?
4. What is the latest revision of the anatomical nomenclature called? How many terms does this revision include?
5. What parts of speech are used in an anatomical term?
6. What is a Noun? What grammatical categories does a Noun have?
7. What genders do Latin nouns have?
8. How are the genders of Latin nouns abbreviated?
9. How many cases does the Latin language have? What cases are used in the Latin anatomical terminology?
10. What components does the dictionary form of a Latin noun consist of?
11. How many declensions are there in the Latin language?
12. Name the Nominative singular endings of all five declensions.
13. Name the Genitive singular endings of all five declensions.
14. How can we define the declension of a noun?
15. How can we define the gender of a noun?
16. How can we determine the stem of a Latin noun?

## 4.7 HOMEWORK

1. Learn the theoretical material of Lesson 4.
2. Learn the Vocabulary of this Lesson.
3. Practice Exercises No. 4– orally, No. 5 – in written form.

## 4.8 VOCABULARY

### 2<sup>nd</sup> declension

- |                    |                        |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| 1. ganglĭon, i n   | - ganglion, nerve-knot |
| 2. ligamentum, i n | - ligament             |
| 3. ramus, i m      | - branch               |
| 4. truncus, i m    | - trunk                |
| 5. tympanum, i n   | - tympanic cavity      |
| 6. vestibulum, i n | - vestibule            |

### 3<sup>rd</sup> declension

7. basis, is f	- base
8. canālis, is m	- chanel
9. caput, ĩtis n	- head
10. corpus, ōris n	- body
11. forāmen, ĩnis n	- opening
12. os, ossis n	- bone
13. tuber, ěris n	- tubercle

### 4<sup>th</sup> declension

14. aquaeductus, us m	- aqueduct ( <i>any canal or passage</i> )
15. arcus, us m	- arch
16. cornu, us n	- horn
17. ductus, us m	- duct
18. processus, us m	- process, outgrowth
19. sinus, us m	- sinus

### 5<sup>th</sup> declension

20. facies, ěi f	- surface, face
------------------	-----------------

## 4.9 EXERCISES

### Exercise 1. *Devide the words in three groups:*

- a) *Masculine nouns,*
- b) *Feminine nouns,*
- B) *neuter nouns:*

Mandibŭla, radius, genu, facies, muscŭlus, collum, crista, nervus, olecrānon, glandŭla, vestibŭlum, chorda, nucleus, cornu, tibia, arcus, incisŭra, dorsum, ductus, vertĕbra, ganglion, angŭlus, sinus, lingua, nasus, tubercŭlum.

### Exercise 2. *Determine the declension of the nouns, find the stem:*

Corpus, ōris n; truncus, i m; fovea, ae f; caput, ĩtis n; os, ossis n; aorta, ae f; sinus, us m; cornu, us n; bronchus, i m; forāmen, ĩnis n; canālis, is m; ramus, i m; genu, us n; arteria, ae f; palātum, i n; basis, is f.

### Exercise 3. *Complete the dictionary form of the nouns:*

Lingua; truncus, i; genu; ganglion; aquaeductus, us; nasus, i; encephālon; tonsilla; muscŭlus, i; spatium; protuberantia; recessus, us; medulla; facies; vesīca; intestīnum; ramus, i; bursa; canalicŭlus, i; spina; cornu; ala; tympanum.

**Exercise 5. *Read and translate, name the dictionary form of each noun:***

Canalicūlus vestibūli, caput radii, chorda tympani, collum scapūlae, corpus fibūlae, crista colli costae, basis cochleae, ala nasi, angūlus costae, apertūra canalicūli cochleae, aquaeductus vestibūli, arcus vertēbrae, arteria brachii, dorsum linguae, facies capītis fibūlae, fossa cranii, incisūra tibiae, lamīna processus, ligamentum scapūlae, muscūlus dorsi, septum linguae, sinus aortae, sulcus costae, tubercūlum muscūli, ramus colli, vagīna processus, vena canalicūli cochleae, ligamentum capītis costae, muscūlus linguae, fascia brachii, arteria colli, caput mandibūlae, corpus tibiae, vestibūlum nasi, vena portae, processus radii, corpus mandibūlae, spina ossis, valvūla foramīnis, crista tubercūli, corpus radii, collum mandibūlae, caput costae, canālis mandibūlae, basis cranii, apertūra aquaeductus vestibūli, arcus aortae, vena faciēi, dorsum sellae, facies capītis costae, forāmen mandibūlae, fascia colli, muscūlus capīs, sulcus sinus.

**Exercise 5. *Read and translate into Latin:***

Vein of vestibular aqueduct, muscular sheath, base of mandible, neck of radius, body of tongue, head of fibula, crest of neck of rib, wing of bone, cochlear aqueduct, arch of maxilla, facial artery, mandibular notch, lamina of vertebral arch, muscle of arm, dorsum of nose, ganglion of cochlea, surface of tubercle of rib, fascia of orbit, fossa for gland, nasal septum, spine of scapula, tubercle of sella, palatine raphe, maxillary tuberosity, ligament of fibular head.

**Adjective.**  
**Adjectives of the**  
**1st and 2nd**  
**declensions**

**Занятие**  
**5**

## 5.2 ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION

In Latin, adjectives must agree with the nouns, they modify in case, number and gender. Because of this, Latin adjectives must also be declined. First and second declension adjectives are declined identically to nouns of the first and second declensions.

The masculine form typically ends in **-us**, the feminine form ends in **-a**, and the neuter form ends in **-um**. The masculine and neuter forms are declined on the pattern of the second declension, and the feminine forms on that of the first declension:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<b>long<u>us</u></b>	<b>long<u>a</u></b>	<b>long<u>um</u></b>
Genitive	<b>long<u>i</u></b>	<b>long<u>ae</u></b>	<b>long<u>i</u></b>

The dictionary form of the Group One adjectives includes three components:

1. **Adjective in the masculine form.**
2. **Ending of the feminine form.**
3. **Ending of the neuter form.**

For example: *transversus, a, um* (transverse);  
*internus, a, um* (internal);  
*profundus, a, um* (deep).

**Finding the stem of the Group One adjectives:** the stem of an adjective is the part before the ending that remains the same in each case, in order to find the stem we should simply delete the gender ending from the word:

- longus                      stem: *long-*
- transversum              stem: *transvers-*
- externa                    stem: *extern-*

### **First and second declension –er adjectives**

Some first and second declension adjectives' masculine form end in an **-er**. In the anatomical nomenclature only several such adjectives are used. .

Memorize the adjectives as follows:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Dectionary Form	English
Nom.	<b>dexter</b>	dextra	dextrum	dexter, tra, trum	right
Gen.	dextri	dextrae	dextri		
Nom.	<b>sinister</b>	sinistra	sinistrum	sinister, tra, trum	left
Gen.	sinistri	sinistrae	sinistri		

<b>Nom.</b>	<b>liber</b>	libĕra	libĕrum	liber, ĕra, ĕrum	free
<b>Gen.</b>	libĕri	libĕrae	libĕri		
<b>Nom.</b>	<b>ruber</b>	rubra	rubrum	ruber, bra, brum	red
<b>Gen.</b>	rubri	rubrae	rubri		

To find the stem we should delete the ending –a from the feminine form of the word:

<b>Dectionary Form</b>	<b>Feminine</b>	<b>Stem</b>
dexter, tra, trum	dextra	dextr-
sinister, tra, trum	sinistra	sinistr-
liber, ĕra, ĕrum	libĕra	liber-
ruber, bra, brum	rubra	rubr-

### 5.3 AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES AND NOUNS

In grammar, agreement is a form of interdependency between different parts of a phrase. Agreement happens when a word changes its form depending on the other words it relates to. For example, we cannot say “*We is*” in English, because “*is*” cannot be used with “*we*”. We say “the word *is* does not agree with the word *we*”.

In Latin, adjectives must agree in case, number and gender with the nouns they modify.

To agree a noun and an adjective means to use them in the same gender, number and case.

To agree a noun and an adjective you should:

1. determine gender, number and case of the noun by its ending;
2. determine class of the adjective by its dictionary form;
3. agree the adjective and the noun in gender, number and case.

For example, you translate from English into Latin the following anatomical term: *mastoid process*.

- *Process* – *processus*: masculine, singular, Nominative. *Mastoid* – *mastoidĕus, a, um*: adjective of Group One. *Mastoideus* is the adjective. It has to agree with the noun it modifies, here, *processus*. We agree the adjective *mastoidĕus* in the masculine gender, singular number, Nominative case: **processus mastoidĕus**.

## 5.4 STRUCTURE OF ANATOMICAL TERMS WITH ADJECTIVES

1. The key word in an anatomical term is a noun in Nominative. It always occupies **the first position**. The modifiers (nouns or adjectives) are placed after the first noun in Nominative. In all Latin anatomical terms *the position of an adjective is **after** the noun it modifies*.
2. An adjective may appear (typically) immediately after the noun it modifies, e.g.: *ligamentum transversum* (transverse ligament), *os palatīnum* (palatine bone), *arcus zygomaticus* (zygomatic arch),  
or disjoint from the noun it modifies, e.g.: *septum nasi osseum* (osseous nasal septum).

## 5.5 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. What is the Adjective?
2. What adjectives belong to Group One?
3. What adjectives belong to Group Two?
4. Name the gender endings of the Group One adjectives.
5. What components does the dictionary form of a Group One adjectives consist of?
6. How is the stem of Group One adjectives found?
7. What is grammatical agreement?
8. How do adjectives and nouns agree?
9. What is the structure of anatomical terms including adjectives?

## 5.6 HOMEWORK

1. Learn the theoretical material of Lesson 5.
2. Learn the Vocabulary of this Lesson.
3. Practice Exercises No. 4, 5, 6 – orally, No. 7, 8 – in written form. .

## 5.7 VOCABULARY

- |                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| 1. dexter, tra, trum | - right ( <i>on the right-hand side</i> ) |
| 2. externus, a,um    | - external                                |
| 3. fibrōsus, a, um   | - fibrous                                 |
| 4. internus, a, um   | - internal                                |

5. latus, a, um	- broad
6. liber, ěra, ěrum	- free
7. lymphaticus, a, um	- lymphatic
8. medius, a, um	- middle
9. ossěus, a, um	- osseous
10. palatĭnus, a, um	- palatine
11. petrĕsus, a, um	- petrous
12. profundus, a, um	- deep
13. pterygoiděus, a, um	- pterygoid
14. sinister, tra, trum	- left ( <i>on the left-hand side</i> )
15. spinĕsus, a, um	- spinous
16. thoracĭcus, a, um	- thoracic
17. thyreoiděus, a, um	- thyroid
18. transversus, a, um	- transverse
19. venĕsus, a, um	- venous
20. zygomaticus, a, um	- zygomatic

## 5.8 EXERCISES

### Exercise 1. *Determine gender of adjectives, name their dictionary form:*

Profundus, thyreoiděus, petrĕsum, ossěus, medium, lymphatică, pterygoiděum, zygomaticus.

### Exercise 2. *Name Feminine and neuter forms of the following adjectives:*

Sinister, internus, pterygoiděus, profundus, spinĕsus, externus, palatĭnus, dexter, lymphaticus.

### Exercise 3. *Form Genitivus singularis of the following adjectives:*

Ossěus, a, um; sinister, tra, trum; fibrĕsus, a, um; transversus, a, um; venĕsus, a, um; palatĭnus, a, um, zygomaticus, a, um.

### Exercise 4. *Translate into English, form Genitivus singularis:*

Canĕlis pterygoiděus, sinus transversus, sulcus palatĭnus, ligamentum profundum, fascia thoracĭca, processus zygomaticus, ramus petrĕsus, processus pterygoideus, glandŭla thyreoiděa, vena sinistra, ligamentum transversum.

### Exercise 5. *Read and translate into English, name the case of each word:*

Ramus dexter, forĕmen spinĕsum, ramus sinister, angŭlus venĕsus, sinus petrĕsus, incisura pterygoiděa, incisŭra palatĭna, ligamentum transversum, ramus

petrōsus, ligamentum venōsum, os palatīnum, ligamentum profundum, sinus venōsus, vena profunda, glandūla thyreoidēa, sinus transversus, incisūra thyreoidēa, septum ossēum, os zygomaticum, sulcus ossēus, nervus spinōsus, forāmen thyreoidēum, muscūlus spinōsus.

**Exercise 6. *Read and translate into English, name the case of each word:***

Sulcus sinus petrōsi, corpus vertēbrae thoracīcae, sutūra palatīna transversa, vena profunda, arcus ductus thoracīci, ductus lymphaticus sinister, fascia thoracīca profunda, capsūla fibrōsa glandūlae thyreoidēae, fossa cranii media, muscūlus transversus, septum nasi ossēum, ligamentum transversum scapūlae, muscūlus spinōsus, ramus dexter venae portae, apertūra externa aquaeductus vestibūli, nervus transversus colli.

**Exercise 7. *Translate into Latin, form Genitivus singularis:***

Deep ligament, venous groove, internal table, bony palate, venous ligament, palatine crest, zygomatic process, thyroid gland, internal surface, transverse line, thoracic fascia, internal capsule.

**Exercise 8. *Translate into Latin:***

Groove for transverse sinus, vein of pterygoid canal, arch of thoracic duct, internal opening of vestibular aqueduct, deep lingual vein, fossa of venous duct, lamina of pterygoid process, spinal muscle of head, internal surface of cranial base, right lobe of thyroid gland, external opening of cochlear canaliculus.

**Adjectives of  
the third  
declension.  
Adjectives with  
one ending**

# Lesson 6

**1. The common masculine and feminine Nominative form.**

**2. The neuter ending –e.**

For example: *frontalis, e* (frontal);  
*cervicalis, e* (cervical).

**Finding the stem of the Group Two adjectives:** the stem of an adjective is the part before the ending that remains the same in each case, in order to find the stem we should simply delete the gender ending –is or –e from the word:

- *vertebrālis* stem: vertebral-
- *temporālis* stem: temporal-

## 6.2 ADJECTIVES WITH ONE ENDING

The third declension adjectives with one ending have single Nominative ending for all three genders. The dictionary form of such adjectives consists of two components: Nominative form for all three genders and the Genitive ending with the changed part of the stem:

Memorize these adjectives:

- **simplex, ĭcis** *simple*
- **multĭplex, ĭcis** *multiple*
- **teres, ětis** *round*

**Finding the stem of the one-ending-adjectives:** to find the stem we should simply delete the ending –is from the Genitive form:

Dictionary form	Genitive singular	Stem
simplex, ĭcis	simplĭcis	simplĭc-
multĭplex, ĭcis	multiplĭcis	multiplĭc-
teres, ětis	terětis	terět-

## 6.3 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. On what pattern are the Group Two adjectives declined?
2. Name all gender endings of the Group Two adjectives.

3. What components does the dictionary form of a Group Two adjectives consist of?
4. How is the stem of the Group Two adjectives found?
5. What components does the dictionary form of adjectives with one ending consist of?
6. Name all one-ending adjectives you know.

## 6.4 HOMEWORK

1. Learn the theoretical material of Lesson 6.
2. Learn the Vocabulary of this Lesson.
3. Practice Exercises No. 6 – orally, No. 7, 8 – in written form.

## 6.5 VOCABULARY

1. articulāris, e	- articular ( <i>joint</i> )
2. cervicālis, e	- cervical
3. commūnis, e	- common
4. ethmoidālis, e	- ethmoidal, cribriform
5. faciālis, e	- facial
6. frontālis, e	- frontal ( <i>related to the forehead</i> )
7. horizontālis, e	- horizontal
8. laterālis, e	- lateral
9. lumbālis, e	- lumbar
10. maxillāris, e	- maxillary
11. nasālis, e	- nasal
12. occipitālis, e	- occipital
13. orbitālis, e	- orbital
14. ovālis, e	- oval
15. parietālis, e	- parietal
16. sphenoidālis, e	- sphenoidal, cuneiforme
17. superficiālis, e	- superficial
18. temporālis, e	- temporal
19. teres, ētis	- round
20. vertebrālis, e	- vertebral

## 6.6 EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Determine gender of the adjectives, name their dictionary form:**

Horizontāle, parietālis, superficiālis, ethmoidāle, lumbāle, temporālis.

**Exercise 2. Name feminine and neuter forms of the following adjectives:**

Occipitālis, laterālis, sphenoidālis, lumbālis, orbitālis, frontālis, parietālis.

**Exercise 3. Form Genitive singular of the following adjectives:**

Orbitālis, e; ovālis, e; articulāris, e; teres, ėtis; horizontālis, e; commūnis, e.

**Exercise 4. Translate into English, form Genitive singular:**

Lamīna orbitālis, sutūra frontālis, os temporāle, arcus vertebrālis, forāmen ovāle, facies articulāris, vertēbra lumbālis, tuber parietāle, fissūra horizontālis, crista ethmoidālis.

**Exercise 5. Read and translate into English, name the case of each word:**

Ramus laterālis, os occipitāle, incisūra ethmoidālis, forāmen vertebrāle, facies laterālis, angūlus frontālis, sinus sphenoidālis, fascia cervicālis, sulcus laterālis, ganglion cervicāle, angūlus occipitālis, sulcus ethmoidālis, canālis vertebrālis, sinus ethmoidālis, incisūra vertebrālis, ligamentum teres, incisūra parietālis, caput laterāle,

**Exercise 6. Read and translate into English, name the case of each word:**

Fovea articulāris processus articulāris, lamīna orbitālis ossis ethmoidālis, truncus lumbālis sinister, sulcus arteriae temporālis mediae, crista occipitālis interna, spina ossis sphenoidālis, facies articulāris capītis costae, ventricūlus laterālis, processus frontālis maxillae, valvūla foramīnis ovālis, facies palatīna lamīnae horizontālis.

**Exercise 7. Translate into Latin, form Genitive singular:**

Occipital opening, lumbar vertebra, cervical ganglion, articular surface, temporal fossa, cuneiform bone, lateral head, frontal tuber, frontal incisure, oval opening, orbital septum, vertebral ganglion, temporal bone, cervical branch, teres (round) muscle.

**Exercise 8. Translate into Latin:**

Ligament of vertebral column, opening of frontal sinus, groove for occipital artery, middle temporal artery, horizontal plate of palatine bone, articular surface of tubercle of rib, superficial fascia of neck, lateral plate of pterygoid process, notch for ligamentum teres, oval opening, thyroid auricular surface.

Degrees of  
Comparison of  
Adjectives

Lesson  
7

## 7.2 COMPARATIVE DEGREE OF LATIN ADJECTIVES

The Comparative is formed by adding **-ior** in *Masculine* and *Feminine* and **-ius** in *Neuter* to the stem of the positive form of an adjective. The Genitive for both is formed by adding **-iōris**.

In the Latin anatomical nomenclature only six adjectives in the comparative form are used. Memorize these adjectives in all grammatical forms:

<i>Masculine Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Genitive</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Dictionary Form</i>
<b>anterior</b>	<b>anterior</b>	<b>anterioriōris</b>	anterior (situated at the front)	anterior, ius
<b>posterior</b>	<b>posterior</b>	<b>posterioriōris</b>	posterior (situated at the back)	posterior, ius
<b>superior</b>	<b>superior</b>	<b>superioriōris</b>	superior (situated above)	superior, ius
<b>inferior</b>	<b>inferior</b>	<b>inferioriōris</b>	inferior (situated below)	inferior, ius
<b>major</b>	<b>major</b>	<b>majoriōris</b>	greater (major, great)	major, jus
<b>minor</b>	<b>minor</b>	<b>minoriōris</b>	lesser (minor)	minor, us

1. The adjectives *anterior/posterior*, *superior/inferior* are used in anatomical **terms of location** typically as positive adjectives:

- In human anatomy **anterior** refers to the “front” and is synonymous with **ventral**. Similarly, **posterior**, refers to the “back”, and is synonymous with **dorsal**. The terms “dorsal” and “ventral” are used infrequently, thus the terms “anterior”, “posterior” are preferred. In the “Terminologia Anatomica” the Latin terms with “anterior”, “posterior” are always translated into English with the same words, but in English they are placed on the first position and not grammatically agreed in the neuter form:

➤ arteria cerebri anterior – *anterior cerebral artery*

➤ ligamentum longitudinale posterius – *posterior longitudinal ligament*.

- **Superior** refers to the location above and is opposed to **inferior**, which refers to the location below. In the “Terminologia Anatomica” the Latin terms with “superior”, “inferior” are always translated into English with the same words, but in English they are placed on the first position and not grammatically agreed in the neuter form:

- ligamentum transversum scapulae inferius – *inferior transverse scapular ligament*
  - nervus cardiacus cervicalis superior – *superior cervical cardiac nerve*.
2. The Latin anatomical terms with “**major**” and “**minor**” are translated into English typically as “greater” and “lesser”, but sometimes they can be translated not as comparative but as positive forms (there is also no grammatical agreement in the neuter form):
- nervus occipitalis major – *greater occipital nerve* (or: *great occipital nerve*)
  - nervus occipitalis minor – *lesser occipital nerve* (or: *small occipital nerve*)
  - foramen palatinum majus – *greater palatine foramen*

In several English terms “major” and “minor” are used:

- cartilage alaris major – *major alar cartilage*
  - ductus sublingualis minor – *minor sublingual duct*.
3. In the Latin anatomical nomenclature both comparative and positive adjectives forms for “big”/“small” - **magnus, a, um / parvus, a, um** (Positive); **major, jus / minor, us** (Comparative) can be used. In most cases, the comparative adjectives forms are used. They are found when similar structures of the body are compared: *ala major / ala minor* – *greater wing / lesser wing*. *Magnus* and *parvus* mean no comparison:
- nervus auricularis magnus – *great auricular nerve*
  - vena cordis parva – *small cardiac vein*.

The **dictionary form** of the adjectives in the comparative form has two components:

1. Nominative singular masculine (the same as the feminine form) with the suffix **-ior**;
2. Suffix **-ius** of the Nominative singular neuter form.

*E.g.: anterior, ius*

The adjectives in the comparative form are declined on the pattern of the **third declension**. The Genitive singular form in the comparative degree is formed by adding the ending **-is** to the stem:

*E.g.: stem - superior + Genitive ending of the 3<sup>rd</sup> declension -is = superiōris for masculine, feminine and neuter.*

The adjectives in the comparative degree are typically placed **on the last position**:

*E.g.: nervus cutaneus brachii laterālis inferior – inferior lateral cutaneous nerve of the arm*

### 7.3 SUPERLATIVE DEGREE OF LATIN ADJECTIVES

The Superlative is regularly formed by adding –issimus (-a, -um) to the stem of the positive form. In the Latin anatomical nomenclature only several adjectives in the superlative form are used. Memorize these adjectives in the dictionary form:

<b>latissimus, a, um – widest</b>	<b>maximus, a, um – largest</b>
<b>longissimus, a, um – longest</b>	<b>minimus, a, um – smallest</b>
<b>supremus, a, um – supreme</b>	

The **dictionary form** of the adjectives in the superlative form has the same components as the Group One adjectives:

1. Adjective in the masculine form.
2. Ending of the feminine form.
3. Ending of the neuter form.

*E.g.: supremus, a, um (supreme).*

**These adjectives** are declined on the pattern of the Group One adjectives, i.e., they end in Genitive singular masculine and neuter in **-i**, in Genitive singular feminine in **-ae**.

### 7.4 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. How many degrees of comparison are there?
2. Name all adjectives in Comparative used in the anatomic nomenclature.
3. Name all adjectives in Superlative used in the anatomic nomenclature.
4. On what pattern are the adjectives in Comparative declined?
5. On what pattern are the adjectives in Superlative declined?
6. What components does the dictionary form of adjectives in Comparative consist of?
7. What components does the dictionary form of adjectives in Superlative consist of?

### 7.5 HOMEWORK

1. Learn the theoretical material of Lesson 7.
2. Learn the Vocabulary of this Lesson.
3. Practice Exercises No. 3, 4 – orally, No. 5, 6, 7 – in written form. .

## 7.6 VOCABULARY

- |                    |           |
|--------------------|-----------|
| 1. cavus, a, um    | - hollow  |
| 2. digītus, i m    | - finger  |
| 3. glutāeus, a, um | - gluteal |
| 4. mediālis, e     | - medial  |
| 5. nervus, i m     | - nerve   |
| 6. scalēnus, a, um | - scalene |
| 7. tibiālis, e     | - tibial  |

### Positive degree

- |                  |         |
|------------------|---------|
| 8. magnus, a, um | - great |
| 9. parvus, a, um | - small |

### Comparative degree

- |                    |                         |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 10. anterior, ius  | - anterior              |
| 11. inferior, ius  | - inferior              |
| 12. major, jus     | - greater, great, major |
| 13. minor, us      | - lesser, small, minor  |
| 14. posterior, ius | - posterior             |
| 15. superior, ius  | - superior              |

### Superlative degree

- |                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| 16. latissīmus, a, um  | - latissimus, widest   |
| 17. longissīmus, a, um | - longissimus, longest |
| 18. maxīmus, a, um     | - maximus, largest     |
| 19. minīmus, a, um     | - minimus, smallest    |
| 20. suprēmus, a, um    | - supreme, highest     |

## 7.7 EXERCISES

**Exercise 1.** *Find adjectives in the comparative and superlative forms, name the dictionary form, form Genitive singular:*

Mediālis, posterius, laterāle, dexter, latissīma, suprēmum, longum, anterior, transversus, minīmus, profunda, internus, media, petrōsus, maxīma, horizontāle,

superficiāle, externus, longissīmus, minus, superior, scalēnus, inferius, glutāeus, cavus, majus.

**Exercise 2. *Translate into English:***

Arcus superior, ala major, tuberculum anterius, crista posterior, sinus inferior, tuberculum minus, arteria superior, spina minor, vena inferior, lamina anterior, ligamentum posterius, sulcus minor, truncus inferior, ramus inferior, ligamentum superius, valvula anterior, cornu inferior, ala minor, musculus superior, canalis major, sulcus anterior, tuberculum majus, ramus anterior, musculus posterior, crista anterior, ductus major, membrum inferius, nervus superior, processus posterior, fossa major, cornu minus, nucleus superior, septum posterius, nervus major, linea anterior, foramen minus.

**Exercise 3. *Translate into Latin, form Genitive singular:***

Angūlus inferior, arcus anterior, columna posterior, cornu superius, facies anterior, fovea inferior, lamīna posterior, ganglion inferius, membrum superius, cornu majus, ala minor, sinus posterior, ramus superior, forāmen minus, processus anterior, caput majus, arteria inferior, tubercūlum posterius, truncus anterior, fossa major, nervus anterior, muscūlus inferior, ligamentum posterius.

**Exercise 4. *Read and translate into English, name the case of each word:***

Valvūla venae cavae inferiōris, vena vertebrālis anterior, sulcus sinus petrōsi superiōris, nervus occipitālis minor, muscūlus scalēnus posterior, ligamentum transversum scapūlae inferius, fossa cranii anterior, fovea articulāris processus articulāris superiōris, crista tubercūli minōris, concha nasālis superior, bursa muscūli terētis majōris, arteria temporālis profunda posterior, caput superius muscūli pterygoidēi laterālis, ala minor ossis sphenoidālis, canālis nervi petrōsi majōris, facies inferior linguae, processus conchae nasālis inferiōris, muscūlus glutāeus maxīmus, bursa muscūli glutāei maxīmi.

**Exercise 5. *Translate into Latin, form Genitive singular:***

Anterior ethmoidal artery, greater palatine canal, inferior nasal concha, anterior medial surface, greater palatine foramen, superior articular fossa, inferior cervical ganglion, superior vertebral notch, posterior ligament, anterior gluteal line, teres minor muscle, greater palatine nerve, lateral posterior nucleus, superior articular process, inferior petrosal sinus, posterior nasal spine, superior frontal sulcus, inferior thyroid tubercle, zygomaticus minor muscle.

**Exercise 6. *Translate into Latin:***

Superior articular process of lumbar vertebra, bursa of anterior tibial muscle, crest of greater tubercle, valve of inferior vena cava, posterior cranial fossa, anterior ligament of head of fibular bone, sulcus nervi petrosi minoris, tuberculum musculi scaleni anterioris, sheath of posterior shin bone, right branch of portal vein, process of inferior nasal concha, temporal surface of greater wing.

**Exercise 7. *Translate into Latin:***

Longissimus capitis muscle, superior thoracic artery, gluteus minimus muscle, bursa of gluteus maximus muscle, supreme nasal concha, little finger, muscle of little finger, latissimus dorsi muscle, longissimus cervicis muscle, scalenus minimus muscle.

## **7.8 REVIEW EXERCISES**

**Exercise 1. *Translate into Latin, form Genitive singular:***

Lesser occipital nerve, inferior frontal sulcus, superior vertebral notch, anterior tibial muscle, superior temporal line, gluteus maximus muscle, internal thoracic vein, greater palatine foramen, thoracic nerve, teres minor muscle, inferior articular process, external nasal branch.

**Exercise 2. *Read, translate, name the dictionary form of adjectives:***

Ventricūlus laterālis, sulcus lacrimālis processus frontālis maxillae, crista tubercūli majōris, facies palatīna lamīnae horizontālis, tubercūlum thyreoidēum inferius, nervus transversus colli, apertūra externa aquaeductus vestibūli, valvūla venae cavae inferiōris, ramus dexter venae portae, canālis nervi petrōsi majōris, vagīna muscūli tibiālis anteriōris, protuberantia occipitālis externa, caput fibūlae anterioris, muscūlus spinōsus capītis.

**Exercise 3. *Translate into Latin:***

Fossa of transverse process, maxillary process of inferior nasal concha, posterior articular process of lumbar vertebra, temporal surface of greater wing of sphenoid bone, muscle of little finger, canal of greater petrosal nerve, posterior ligament of head of fibula, latissimus dorsi muscle, longissimus capitis muscle, scalenus minimus muscle, superior thoracic artery, external opening of cochlear canaliculus, longissimus cervicis muscle, right lobe of thyroid gland, thyroid articular surface.

Third declension  
nouns.

Masculine gender

# Lesson 8

---

- The *parisyllaba* have equal number of syllables in Nominative and Genitive:  
e.g., **auris, is f** – *ear*, **cutis, is f** – *skin*
- The *imparisyllaba* have unequal number of syllables in Nominative and Genitive – they have one more syllable in Genitive singular:  
e.g., **corpus, ōris n** – *body*, **caput, ĭtis n** – *head*.

The **dictionary form** of *imparisyllaba* includes not only the Genitive singular ending but also the changed part of the stem or the whole Genitive singular form:

e.g., **paries, ĕtis m** – *wall*, **os, ossis n** – *bone*.

### Finding the stem of the third declension nouns

In order to determine the stem of the third declension nouns we should delete the ending **–is** from the **Genitive singular form**:

**For example:**

<b>forāmen, ĭnis n</b> →	<b>foramĭn – is</b>	<b>- foramen, opening</b>
<b>caput, ĭtis n</b> →	<b>capĭt –is</b>	<b>- head</b>
<b>paries, ĕtis m</b> →	<b>pariĕt – is</b>	<b>- wall</b>

## 8.2 ENDINGS OF MASCULINE THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS

Masculine, feminine and neuter nouns each have their own special Nominative singular endings in the third declension. Most **masculine nouns** end in:

	Endings		Examples
	Nominative singular	Genitive singular (with part of the stem)	
1.	<b>- or</b>	<b>- ōris</b>	<b>constrictor, ōris m</b> – <i>constrictor</i>
2.	<b>- o</b>	<b>- ōnis</b>	<b>pulmo, pulmōnis m</b> – <i>lung</i>
3.	<b>- er</b>	<b>- ēris</b>	<b>sphincter, sphinctēris m</b> – <i>sphincter</i>
4.	<b>- ex</b>	<b>- ĭcis</b>	<b>apex, apĭcis m</b> – <i>apex</i>
5.	<b>- es</b>	<b>- ēdis</b>	<b>pes, pedis m</b> – <i>foot</i>
		<b>- ĕtis</b>	<b>paries, pariĕtis m</b> – <i>wall</i>

## 8.3 EXCEPTIONS TO THE RULE OF THE MASCULINE THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS ENDINGS

Exeptions are the following:

The following noun with a masculine ending is **feminine**:

gaster, tris f (Greek) – *stomach*;

The following nouns with masculine endings are **neuter**:

- cor, cordis n – *heart*;
- os, ossis n – *bone*;
- tuber, ěris n – *tuber*.

## 8.4 LATIN MUSCLE NAMES

In the Latin anatomical nomenclature all the *one-word muscle names* are **masculine third declension nouns** ending in:

- **-or, ōris m** (e.g., rotātor, ōris m);
- **-er, ěris m** (e.g., massēter, ěris m).

The **structure** of the Latin *multi-word muscle names* is as follows:

Latin	English
1. On the first position the noun « <b>musĉulus</b> » ( <i>muscle</i> ) is placed, it is a <i>compulsory</i> element of the Latin muscle name.	
2. In the Latin muscle names with the pattern “musculus + modifying adjectives” adjectives are placed after “musculus”. The English muscle names have an inverse word-order.	
• Musculus rectus	• Straight muscle
• Musculus pterygoideus lateralis	• Lateral pterygoid muscle
• Musculus teres major	• Teres major muscle
<i>In such English muscle names the word “muscle” can be omitted: e.g., “longissimus muscle” = “longissimus”, “scalenus minimus muscle” = “scalenus muscle”</i>	
3. In the Latin muscle names the third declension noun denoting the function of the muscle is placed after “musculus”. The English muscle names have an inverse word-order (the word “muscle” can be omitted):	
• Musculus abductor	• Abductor muscle
• Musculus rotator	• Rotator muscle
• Musculus extensor	• Extensor muscle
4. Any following nouns in the Latin muscle names are in <b>Genitive singular</b> . <b>Nota Bene:</b> In the English muscle names the word-order is as follows: the third declension noun denoting the function of the muscle is placed <b>on the first</b>	

<b>position</b> , the word “muscle” is placed <b>on the final position</b> , other words are between these two components:	
• Musculus depressor anguli oris	• <u>Depressor</u> anguli oris <u>muscle</u>
• Musculus levator labii superioris	• <u>Levator</u> labii superioris <u>muscle</u>
• Musculus levator scapulae	• <u>Levator</u> scapulae <u>muscle</u>
• Musculus levator glandulae thyroideae	• <u>Levator</u> glandulae thyroideae <u>muscle</u>
<i>In such English muscle names the word “muscle” can be omitted: e.g., “depressor supercilii muscle” = “depressor supercilii”, “depressor anguli oris muscle” = “depressor anguli oris”</i>	
5. The Latin muscle names including modifying nouns and adjectives have the following word-order: “musculus” on the first position, then the modifying adjective and then the modifying noun. In the English muscle names the adjective is placed on the first position and the word “muscle” on the final .	
• Musculus longus colli	• Longus colli muscle
• Musculus rectus abdominis	• Rectus abdominis muscle
• Musculus longissimus thoracis	• Longissimus thoracis muscle
• Musculus latissimus dorsi	• Latissimus dorsi muscle
• Musculus obliquus externus abdominis	• External oblique muscle; External abdominal oblique muscle
<i>In such English muscle names the word “muscle” can be omitted: e.g., “rectus capitis posterior major muscle” = “rectus capitis posterior major”</i>	
6. On this pattern the more complicated Latin muscle names are formed and translated:	
• Musculus rectus capitis anterior	• Rectus capitis anterior muscle
• Musculus obliquus capitis superior	• Obliquus capitis superior muscle
• Musculus rectus capitis posterior minor	• Rectus capitis posterior minor muscle
• Musculus flexor hallucis brevis	• Flexor hallucis brevis muscle
7. The Latin anatomical nomenclature can include anatomical terms denoting some structures of muscles, e.g., with expressions “vagina tendinis...”, retinaculum musculi...”, bursa musculi...”. The word-order in Latin and in English is as follows:	
• Vagina tendinis musculi flexoris carpi radialis	• Tendinous sheath of flexor carpi radialis muscle
• Vagina tendinis musculi extensoris digiti minimi brevis	• Tendinous sheath of extensor digiti minimi brevis muscle
• Bursa musculi bicipitis femoris superior	• Superior bursa of biceps femoris muscle

## 8.5 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. What nouns does the third declension include?
2. What ending do the third declension nouns in Genitive singular have?
3. What third declension nouns are called *parisyllaba* and *imparisyllaba*? What components does the dictionary form of the third declension nouns consist of?
4. How is the stem of the third declension nouns determined?
5. Name the endings of the masculine third declension nouns.
6. Name exceptions to the rule of the masculine third declension nouns endings.
7. What is the basic structure of the Latin muscle names?
8. When can the word “muscle” be omitted in the English muscle names?

## 8.6 HOMEWORK

1. Learn the theoretical material of Lesson 8.
2. Learn the Vocabulary of this Lesson.
3. Practice Exercises No. 2, 5 – orally, No. 3, 4, 6 – in written form.

## 8.7 VOCABULARY

1. anus, i m - anus
2. apex, ĭcis m - apex (*the pointed end of a cone-shaped part*)
3. cor, cordis n - heart
4. fissūra, ae f - fissure
5. gaster, tris f - stomach
6. labium, i n - lip
7. muscŭlus abductor (ōris m) - abductor muscle  
*muscle that moves a part away from an axis or from the midline of the body or some other structure*
8. muscŭlus adductor (ōris m) - adductor muscle  
*muscle that moves a part toward an axis or toward the midline of the body or some other structure*
9. muscŭlus constrictor (ōris m) - constrictor muscle (*a muscle that constricts a part*)

10. muscūlus depressor (ōris m) - depressor muscle (*a muscle that presses down*)
11. muscūlus extensor (ōris m) - extensor muscle (*a muscle that straightens a joint*)
12. muscūlus flexor (ōris m) - flexor muscle (*a muscle that flexes a joint*)
13. muscūlus levātor (ōris m) - levātor muscle (*a muscle that elevates an organ or structure*)
14. muscūlus rotātor (ōris m) - rotātor muscle  
*muscle that produces a rotation, alone or in concert with other rotators, around an axis*
15. muscūlus sphincter (ēris m) - sphincter muscle  
*a circular muscle that constricts a passage or closes a natural orifice*
16. muscūlus tensor (ōris m) - tensor muscle  
*any muscle that stretches or makes tense*
17. paries, ětis m - wall
18. pes, pedis m - foot
19. pharynx, yngis m - pharynx (*throat*)
20. pulmo, ōnis m - lung

## 8.8 EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Form Genitive singular, find the stem of the nouns:**

Pulmo, paries, gaster, apex, flexor, sphincter, tuber, pes, rotator.

**Exercise 2. Read and translate, name the dictionary form of the third declension nouns:**

Paries posterior, apertūra inferior, apex cornus posteriōris, arcus pedis, pulmo dexter, facies mediālis pulmōnis, incisūra apīcis cordis, muscūlus transversus, paries anterior gastris, processus temporālis ossis zygomatīci, sinus cordis, spina ossis sphenoidālis, tunīca gastris, tuber maxillae, ventricūlus dexter cordis, apex pulmōnis sinistri, arteria pedis, facies laterālis ossis zygomatīci, paries externus ductus, digītus minimus pedis, apex cordis.

**Exercise 3. Make adjectives and nouns agree, form Genitive singular:**

Parietal bone, anterior wall, right lung, frontal bone, zygomatic bone, left lung, cuneiform bone, medial wall, frontal tuber, temporal wall, ethmoid bone, parietal tuber.

**Exercise 4. *Translate into Latin:***

Vein of the right lung, left ventricle of heart, wall of the stomach, ethmoidal sulcus of nasal bone, medial wall of the orbit, notch of the left lung, fascia of foot, lesser horn of bone, horizontal fissure of right lung, dorsal venous arch of foot, apex of head of fibula, great cardiac vein, nasal spine of frontal bone, wall of trachea.

**Exercise 5. *Translate into English, pay attention to the structure of the muscle names:***

Muscūlus levātor scapūlae, muscūlus levātor glandūlae thyreoideae, muscūlus rotātor colli, muscūlus levātor labii superiōris, muscūlus flexor digīti minīmi brevis, muscūlus depressor septi nasi, muscūlus constrictor pharyngis inferior, muscūlus abductor digīti minīmi, muscūlus constrictor pharyngis medius, muscūlus levātor ani, muscūlus sphincter ani externus.

**Exercise 6. *Translate into Latin:***

Rotator muscle of neck; tensor muscle of wide fascia; interior sphincter muscle of anus; extensor muscle of little finger; depressor muscle of lower lip; superior constrictor muscle of pharynx; adductor muscle; elevator muscle of anus; bursa of tensor muscle; sulcus of flexor muscle; fibrous sheath of extensor muscle.

Third declension  
nouns.  
Feminine gender

# Lesson 9

---

	<i>(parisyllaba)</i>		
3.	<b>- s</b>	<b>- tis</b>	<b>pars, partis f – part</b>
4.	<b>- x</b>	<b>- cis</b>	<b>radix, radicis f – root</b>
5.	<b>- go,-do</b> <b>- io</b>	<b>- ĩnis</b> <b>- ōnis</b>	<b>cartilāgo, cartilagĩnis f – cartilage</b> <b>articulatio, articulatiŃnis f – joint</b>

## 9.2 EXCEPTIONS TO THE RULE OF THE FEMININE THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS ENDINGS

Exeptions are the following:

The following nouns with feminine endings are **masculine**:

- axis, is m – *axis*;
- canālis, is m – *canal*;
- dens, dentis m – *tooth*;
- margo, ĩnis m – *border*.

The following noun with a feminine ending is **neuter**:

- vas, vasis n – *vessel*.

## 9.3 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. Name the endings of the feminine third declension nouns.
2. Name exeptions to the rule of the feminine third declension nouns endings.

## 9.4 HOMEWORK

1. Learn the theoretical material of Lesson 9.
2. Learn the Vocabulary of this Lesson.
3. Practice Exercises No. 2, 4 – orally, No. 3, 5 – in written form.

## 9.5 VOCABULARY

alāris, e	- alar
articulatio, ōnis f	- joint
auris, is f	- ear
axis, is m	- axis, C2
capillāris, e	- capillary
cartilāgo, ĩnis f	- cartilage
cavĭtas, ātis f	- cavity
composĭtus, a, um	- composite, complex
dens, dentis m	- tooth
dens canĭnus (us, a, um)	- canine tooth
dens incisĭvus (us, a, um)	- incisor
dens molāris (is, e)	- molar tooth
margo, ĩnis m	- boarder
pars, partis f	- part
pelvis, is f	- pelvis
radix, ĩcis f	- root
regio, ōnis f	- region
simplex, ĩcis	- simple
tuberosĭtas, ātis f	- tuberosity
vas, vasis n	- vessel

## 9.6 EXERCISES

### Exercise 1. *Form Genitive singular, find the stem of the nouns:*

Pelvis, basis, auris, axis, cartilāgo, margo, tuberosĭtas, cavĭtas, regio, pars, dens.

### Exercise 2. *Translate into English:*

Auris media, pars cervicālis, auris externa, articulātio transversa, vas capillāre, pars posterior, articulatio laterālis, articulatio composĭta, radix dorsālis, radix cochleāris, margo frontālis, pelvis minor, margo anterior, pars alāris, pelvis renālis, margo liber, pelvis major, axis internus, radix inferior, canālis incisĭvus, tuberosĭtas glutāea, pars laterālis, dens incisĭvus, margo nasālis, cartilāgo thyreoidea, regio orbitālis, pars thoracĭca, margo zygomatĭcus, tuberosĭtas

articulāris, pars profunda, regio parietālis, margo sphenoidālis, regio temporālis, margo occipitālis, canālis palatīnus, pars superficiālis, dens canīnus, pars anterior, canalis faciālis, pars ossēa, margo inferior.

**Exercise 3. *Translate into Latin, form Genitive singular:***

Internal ear, simple joint, right border, lymphatic vessel, pterygoid tuberosity, molar tooth, vertebral canal, lumbar region, right part, alar border, external axis, cervical part.

**Exercise 4. *Read, translate, name the dictionary form of the third declension nouns:***

Margo superior partis petrōsae, cartilāgo costālis, basis cochleae, dens incisīvus superior, cartilāgo alāris major, auris externa, cartilāgo septi nasi, canālis radīcis dentis, basis pulmōnis, pars thoracīca aortae, radix pulmōnis, forāmen apīcis dentis, pars laterālis ossis occipitālis, tuberculum posterius, pars petrōsa vestibūli, radix cochleāris inferior, muscūlus levātor labii superiōris, pars tympanīca ossis temporālis, cavitas dentis, articulatio humēri, radix dentis molāris, cartilāgo nasi laterālis, muscūlus abductor digīti minīmi, cavitas tympanīca auris mediae, canālis nervi petrōsi majōris, margo posterior partis petrōsae.

**Exercise 5. *Translate into Latin:***

Part of fibrous sheath, cervical canal of uterus, cartilage of nasal septum, medial superior incisor, rotator muscle of neck, superficial lymphatic vessel, cochlear duct of internal ear, anterior region of neck, surface of canine tooth, articulation of rib head, left border of uterus, artery of pterygoid canal, root apex, axis of pelvis, coat of pharynx, inferior root, spinal muscle of neck, sulcus of flexor muscle, pharyngeal cavity.

Third declension  
nouns.  
Neuter gender

# Lesson 10

---

3.	<b>- en</b>	<b>- ģinis</b>	<b>abdōmen, abdomģinis n – abdomen</b>
4.	<b>- ma</b>	<b>- āģtis</b>	<b>systema, systemģģtis n – system</b>
5.	<b>- ur</b>	<b>- ōģris</b>	<b>femur, femģģris n – thigh</b>
6.	<b>- us</b>	<b>- ūģris</b>	<b>crus, crurģģris n – leg, limb</b>
7.	<b>- ut</b>	<b>- ģģtis</b>	<b>caput, capģģtis n – head</b>

## 10.2 EXCEPTIONS TO THE RULE OF THE FEMININE THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS ENDINGS

Exeptions are the following:

The following nouns with neuter endings are **masculine**:

- lien, liģģnis m – *spleen*;
- ren, renģģ m – *kidney*.

The third declension **neuter** nouns ending in **-ma** should be distinguished from the third declension **feminine** nouns ending in **-a**:

**e.g., systema, āģtis n – system**

## 10.3 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. Name the endings of the neuter third declension nouns.
2. Name exeptions to the rule of the neuter third declension nouns endings.
3. What Genitive singular endings do the feminine first declension nouns in **-a** and the neuter third declension nouns in **-ma** have?

## 10.4 HOMEWORK

1. Learn the theoretical material of Lesson 10.
2. Learn the Vocabulary of this Lesson.
3. Practice Exercises No. 2, 4 – orally, No. 3, 5 – in written form.

## 10.5 VOCABULARY

1. abdōmen, ĩnis n	- abdomen
2. callōsus, a, um	- callosum, callous
3. carotĭcus, a, um	- carotid
4. cavernōsus, a, um	- cavernosus, cavernous
5. centrālis, e	- central
6. crus, cruris n	- crus, limb, leg
7. dorsālis, e	- dorsal
8. femur, ōris n	- thigh
9. hepar, ātis n	- liver
10. impressio, ōnis f	- impression
11. lien, ēnis m	- spleen
12. longus, a, um	- long
13. mentālis, e	- mental
14. nervōsus, a, um	- nervous
15. oblĭquus, a, um	- oblique
16. palmāris, e	- palmar
17. ren, renis m	- kidney
18. renālis, e	- renal
19. rete, is n	- rete, network
20. systēma, ātis n	- system

## 10.6 EXERCISES

### Exercise 1. *Form Genitive singular, find the stem of the nouns:*

Ren, systēma, rete, lien, hepar, crus, abdōmen, caput, corpus, femur, forāmen.

### Exercise 2. *Form Genitive singular, translate into English:*

Crus commūne, systēma lymphaticum, rete palmāre, caput longum, forāmen ethmoidāle posterius, caput zygomaticum, crus dextrum, forāmen parietāle, ren dexter, systēma nervōsum, caput profundum, vas lymphaticum profundum, caput transversum, forāmen thyreoideum, impressio renālis, forāmen vertebrāle, corpus callōsum, ren dexter, forāmen palatĭnum majus.

**Exercise 3. *Translate into Latin:***

Oblique head, central system, superficial head, corpus cavernosum, renal impression, cavernous body, bony limb, frontal foramen, simple osseous crus, incisive foramen, long crus, left kidney, spinous foramen, capillary vessel, articular network, mental foramen, dorsal network, nervous system.

**Exercise 4. *Read, translate, name the dictionary form of the third declension nouns:***

Arteria renis, articulatio capitis costae, caput femoris, foramen apicis dentis, fossa capitis femoris, porta hepatis, musculus rectus abdominis, nervus cruris, foramen incisivum processus palatini, plexus venosus foraminis ovalis, regio femoris anterior, sinus lienis, foramen externum, musculus levator glandulae thyreoideae, sulcus corporis callosi, systema lymphaticum, crus posterius capsulae internae, capsula renis, foramen mandibulae, musculus obliquus abdominis internus, foramen venae cavae inferioris, crus mediale cartilaginis alaris minoris, musculus rotator colli, caput superius musculi pterygoidei, truncus corporis callosi, vagina musculi recti abdominis, ligamentum capitis femoris.

**Exercise 5. *Translate into Latin:***

Magnus occipital foramen, deep vein of thigh, central nervous system, crural fascia, body of orbit, cavity of abdomen, neck of femur, fibrous capsule of kidney, abdominal external oblique muscle, artery of liver, simple osseous crus, pancreatic notch, round ligament of liver, long muscle of head, posterior nerve of thigh, posterior region of leg, dorsal venous network of foot, body of bone, transverse muscle of abdomen, rectus muscle of thigh, fibrous sheath of extensor muscle, part of nasal septum.

Nominative  
plural

Lesson  
11

**Nota bene:** Memorize the only third declension neuter noun in the anatomic nomenclature which has the Nominative plural ending **-ia**: **rete** – **retia** (*network – networks*).

The Latin **adjectives** have Nominative plural endings as follows:

<i>Group One adjectives &amp; adjectives in superlative form</i>			<i>Group Two adjectives</i>		<i>Adjectives in comparative form</i>	
<b>m</b>	<b>f</b>	<b>n</b>	<b>m, f</b>	<b>n</b>	<b>m, f</b>	<b>n</b>
<b>-i</b>	<b>-ae</b>	<b>-a</b>	<b>-es</b>	<b>-ia</b>	<b>-es</b>	<b>-a</b>

**Nota bene:** All neuter nouns irrespective of their declension as well as all adjectives in the neuter form in Nominative plural end in **-a** (adjectives of Group Two - in **-ia**).

## 11.2 FORMATION OF NOMINATIVE PLURAL FORMS

To form the Nominative plural noun or adjective forms you should:

1) determine:

- declension and gender of a noun, or
- group and gender of an adjective;

2) find the stem and add the appropriate Nominative plural ending of this declension and gender.

**E.g.,**

	<b>Declension, gender, group and degree of comparison</b>	<b>Stem</b>	<b>Nominative plural</b>
<b>Nouns</b>			
vena, ae f	1 declension, feminine	ven -	ven - ae
nervus, i m	2 declension, masculine	nerv -	nerv - i
spatium, i n	2 declension, neuter	spati -	spati - a
dens, dentis m	3 declension, masculine	dent -	dent - es
regio, ōnis f	3 declension, feminine	region -	regiōn - es
corpus, ōris n	4 declension, neuter	corpor-	corpōr - a
sinus, us m	4 declension, masculine	sin -	sin - us
cornu, us n	5 declension, neuter	corn -	corn - ua
facies, ēi f	5 declension, feminine	faci -	faci - es

<b>Adjectives</b>			
cavernōsus	Group One, masculine	cavernos -	cavernōs - i
cavernōsa	Group One, feminine	cavernos -	cavernōs - ae
cavernōsum	Group One, neuter	cavernos -	cavernōs - a
frontālis	Group Two, masculine or feminine	frontal -	frontāl - es
frontāle	Group Two, neuter	frontal -	frontāl - ia
minor	Comparative degree, masculine or feminine	minor -	minōr - es
minus	Comparative degree, neuter	minor -	minōr - a

**Nota Bene:** To form the **Nominative plural of the third declension nouns** you should:

1. form the Genitive singular form;
2. find the stem (obtained from the Genitive singular form without its ending **-is**);
3. add the appropriate Nominative plural ending of this gender.

**E.g.:**

Dens → dent-is → dent - + - es → dentes

Foramen → foramĭn - is → foramĭn - + -a → foramĭna

### 11.3 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. Name all noun endings in Nominative plural for all declensions.
2. What noun has the ending **-ia** in Nominative plural?
3. Name all adjective endings in Nominative plural for all adjective groups.
4. How is Nominative plural of the third declension nouns formed?

### 11.4 HOMEWORK

1. Learn the theoretical material of Lesson 11.
2. Learn the Vocabulary of this Lesson.
3. Practice Exercises No. 6 – orally, No. 4, 7 – in written form.

## 11.5 VOCABULARY

1. accessorius, a, um	- accessory
2. alveolāris, e	- alveolar
3. alveolus, i m	- alveolus, alveole
4. craniālis, e	- cranial
5. dentālis, e	- dental
6. foveōla, ae f	- pit
7. gastrīcus, a, um	- gastric
8. intercostālis, e	- intercostal
9. interlobulāris, e	- interlobular
10. interspinōsus, a, um	- interspinous
11. jugum, i n	- jugum, yoke
12. nodus, i m	- node
13. pectorālis, e	- pectoral
14. plexus, us m	- plexus ( <i>a network of veins or nerves</i> )
15. plica, ae f	- ridge, fold
16. serrātus, a, um	- serrate
17. sinusoideus, a, um	- sinusoid
18. spatium, i n	- space
19. spinālis, e	- spinal
20. sublinguālis, e	- sublingual

## 11.6 EXERCISES

### **Exercise 1. Form Nominative plural of the following nouns:**

Vertēbra, plica, vena, nervus, sulcus, ligamentum, ganglion, pars, articulatio, forāmen, sinus, cornu, facies, orbīta, paries, processus, gingīva, os, septum, ductus, crus, bursa, rete, corpus, jugum, foveōla, muscūlus, ala.

### **Exercise 2. Determine gender, number, case, group and degree of comparison of the following adjectives, name their dictionary form:**

Maxīmae, propria, internae, profunda, sublingualia, majōra, occipitalia, spināles, anteriōra, interspinōsi, intercostalia, serrātae, dentāles, pectoralia, pterygoideae, medii, nervōsae, recta, inferiōres, canīni, suprēmae.

**Exercise 3. *Translate into English:***

Arteriae ethmoidāles, arteriae interlobulāres, canāles alveolāres, cornua majōra, dentes incisīvi, forāmīna alveolaria, glandūlae gastrīcae, glandūlae palatīnae, juga alveolaria, nervi cavernōsi, nervi cervicāles, plexus gastrīci, sulci orbilāles, sulci venōsi, vertebrae lumbāles, vertebrae pectorāles, arteriae alveolāres superior anterior, cartilagīnes alāres minōres, ductus sublinguāles minōres, glandūlae lacrimāles accessoriae, processus articulāres superiōres, plexus vertebrāles interni, venae lumbāles dextrae.

**Exercise 4. *Translate into Latin:***

Lumbar arteries, lateral canals, lesser horns, canine teeth, ethmoidal foramina, nasal glands, pterygoid nerves, venous plexuses, palatine grooves, cervical vertebrae, incisive foramina, lesser palatine canals, lateral crests, dorsal foramina, inferior vertebral notches, long nerves, transverse temporal sulci, superficial lymphatic vessels.

**Exercise 5. *Translate into English:***

Alae nasi, apertūrae laterāles ventricūli, arteriae palatīnae minōres, articulatiōnes pedis, bursae et vagīnae, canalicūli chordae tympani, fasciae orbitae, glandūlae cervicāles utēri, labia oris, ligamenta glandūlae thyreoidēae, muscūli interossei dorsāles, nervi carotīci externi, nodi lymphatīci colīci dextri, nuclei corpōris, ossa membri inferiōris, rami intercostāles anteriōres, regiōnes digīti palmāres et dorsāles, trunci lumbāles dexter et sinister, vasa auris internae, venae interlobulāres hepātis, muscūli rotatōres colli, foveolae gastrīcae, partes laterāles ossis occipitālis, cartilagīnes thyreoidēae accessoriae, dentes molāres, forāmīna palatīna minōra, plicae transversae recti.

**Exercise 6. *Translate into Latin:***

Alveoli of the lung, openings of sphenoidal sinus, interlobar arteries of the kidney, right and left lateral canals, toes, ganglia of the trunk, accessory thyroid glands, ligaments of mandibular joints, interspinal muscles of neck, deep temporal nerves, left gastric lymphatic nodes, nuclei of the central nervous system, spinal roots, regions of upper limb, mental tubercles, deep veins of the tongue, bursae of gluteus medius muscles, rotator muscles of the thorax, anterior and posterior parietal arteries.

Genitive  
plural

Lesson  
12

**Nota Bene:** Group One adjectives and adjectives in the superlative degree are declined on the pattern of the first and second declension nouns (feminine - on the pattern of the first declension, masculine and neuter - on the pattern of the second declension).

**E.g. longus, a, um – longōrum, ārum, ōrum**  
**maxīmus, a, um – maximōrum, ārum, ōrum**

## 12.2 GENITIVE PLURAL OF THE THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

The third declension nouns and adjectives in Genitive plural end either in **-um** or **in-ium**:

The ending **-um** have:

1. the so-called *imparisyllaba*, i.e. the nouns that have unequal number of syllables in Nominative and Genitive, whose **stem ends in a consonant**:

**E.g. forāmen, ĩnis n – foramĭn-um;**  
**pulmo, ōnis m – pulmōn-um;**  
**pes, pedis m – ped-um.**

2. adjectives in comparative degree:

**E.g. anterior, ius – anteriōr-um.**

The ending **-ium** have:

1. the so-called *imparisyllaba*, i.e. the nouns that have unequal number of syllables in Nominative and Genitive, whose **stem ends in two or more consonants**:

**E.g. dens, dentis m – dent-ium;**  
**pars, partis f – part-ium;**  
**os, ossis n – oss-ium.**

2. Group Two adjectives:

**E.g. brevis, e – brev-ium;**  
**frontālis, e – frontal-ium;**  
**simplex, ĩcis – simplic-ium.**

Memorize the Genitive plural forms of the following nouns:

- **rete, is n – ret-ium**
- **canālis, is m – canal-ium**

**Nota Bene:** The third declension noun **vas, vasis n** (*vessel*) is declined in Genitive plural on the pattern of the second declension: **vas-ōrum**.

## 12.3 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. Name all noun and adjective endings in Genitive plural for all declensions.
2. How are Group One adjectives and the adjectives in the comparative form declined in Genitive plural?
3. What endings do the third declension nouns and adjectives in Genitive plural have?

## 12.4 HOMEWORK

1. Learn the theoretical material of Lesson 12.
2. Learn the Vocabulary of this Lesson.
3. Practice Exercises No. 6 – orally, No. 5, 7 – in written form.

## 12.5 VOCABULARY

- |                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| 1. auriculāris, e            | - auricular   |
| 2. fauces, ium f<br>(plural) | - fauces (pl), throat                               |
| 3. fibulāris, e              | - fibular   |
| 4. flavus, a, um             | - yellow  |
| 5. interalveolāris, e        | - interalveolar                                     |
| 6. interradiculāris, e       | - interradicular                                    |
| 7. linguālis, e              | - lingual   |
| 8. manus, us f               | - hand  |
| 9. massa, ae f               | - mass  |
| 10. medulla, ae f            | - medulla (marrow-like structure)                   |
| 11. medulla ossium           | - bone marrow                                       |
| 12. nodūlus, i m             | - nodule  |
| 13. papilla, ae f            | - papilla ( <i>a small nipple-like projection</i> ) |
| 14. peronāeus, a, um         | - peroneal  |
| 15. retinacūlum, i n         | - retinaculum, frenulum                             |
| 16. ruber, bra, brum         | - red   |
| 17. semilunāris, e           | - semilunar   |
| 18. tendo, ĩnis m            | - tendon  |

19. trigeminālis, e - trigeminal  
 20. trochleāris, e - trochlear

## 12.6 EXERCISES

### Exercise 1. *Determine the noun declension, name the dictionary form:*

Musculōrum, sinuum, arteriārum, faciērum, gangliōrum, alārum, plexuum, nodōrum, nervōrum, cornuum, valvulārum, ductuum, venārum, glandulārum, septōrum, processuum, sulcōrum, costārum, capsulārum, conchārum, angulōrum, suturārum.

### Exercise 2. *Translate into Latin in the dictionary form, form Genitive plural:*

- a) Gingiva, lip, ganglion, sinus, gland, groove, nerve, surface, angle, horn, duct, node, vein, fold, muscle, process, lamina, vestibule, eye, finger, septum, cusp, sinus.  
 б) Incisor, maximus, mental, yellow, alveolar, longest, supreme, thoracic, transverse, **petrous, palatine, widest, lingual, venous, smallest** .

### Exercise 3. *Form Genitive plural:*

- a) Forāmen, ĩnis n; canālis, is m; cavitas, ātis f; impressio, ōnis f; rete, is n; dens, dentis m; paries, ětis m; pars, partis f; caput, ĩtis n.  
 б) Minor, us; laterālis, e; frontālis, e; anterior, ius; ethmoidālis, e; inferior, ius; sphenoidālis, e; occipitālis, e; major, jus; posterior, ius; linguālis, e; superior, ius.

### Exercise 4. *Form Genitive plural:*

Muscūlus faciālis, paries superior et inferior, arcus dentālis, ala major et minor, ligamentum profundum, glandūla linguālis posterior, forāmen ovāle, nodus lymphatĭcus, cartilāgo nasālis accessoria, vertebra lumbālis, nervus craniālis, canālis palatĭnus, sinus petrōsus, rete venōsum, tuber parietāle, massa laterālis.

### Exercise 5. *Translate into Latin, form Nominative and Genitive plural:*

Mental tubercle, greater and lesser horn, incisor tooth, alveolar foramen, ethmoidal groove, cervical vertebra, sphenoidal s medulla ossium rubra flava inus, posterior ligament, palatine groove, articular surface, tooth socket, nasal concha, alar cartilage, greater palatine canal, frontal tuber, semilunar cusp, fibularis muscle, vena cava, gastric fold.

**Exercise 6. *Read, translate into English:***

Retinaculum inferius musculorum extensorum, bursae musculorum glutaeorum, foramina venarum minimarum, tuberculum posterius anterius vertebrarum cervicalium, vagina fibrōsa digitorum pedis, retinaculum musculorum flexorum, septum sinuum frontalem, vagina tendinum musculi flexoris longi digitorum pedis, plexus cavernosus conchārum, tunica corporum cavernosorum, regiones digitorum palmāres et dorsāles, facies anterior et posterior dentium, musculus extensor digitorum longus, plexus nervorum spinalium, medulla ossium rubra et flava, retinaculum musculorum fibularium inferius, vagina communis musculorum flexorum digitorum, musculi levatores costarum, processus accessorius vertebrarum lumbalium.

**Exercise 7. *Translate into Latin:***

Alveoli of the lungs; septum of cavernous bodies; vasa vasorum; muscles of palate and fauces; veins of bones; bones of sutures; venous plexuses of conchae; vessels of nerves; canals of nerves; lingual surface of incisor teeth; ganglia of plexuses; ligaments of tendons; levator muscles of ribs; flexor digitorum profundus muscle; vascular nerves; sheath of muscular tendons; bones of foot; nodules of the aortic cusps; medial plates of processes; nuclei of cranial nerves; septum of frontal sinuses; sinus of venae cavae.

# Review

# Lesson 13

---

- finding the stem of an adjective.

**Nota Bene:** Review the peculiarities of adjectives ending in **-er** (dexter, tra, trum) and adjectives with one ending (simplex, ĩcis).

## 13.2 REVIEW OF THE VOCABULARY

Review all the anatomical terms of this manual (part “Vocabulary” in each lesson).

## 13.3 FINAL TEST SAMPLE

### 1. *Translate into Latin in the dictionary form:*

- |                                |               |
|--------------------------------|---------------|
| 1. thoracic                    | 7. tooth      |
| 2. lesser (comparative degree) | 8. stomach    |
| 3. root                        | 9. horn       |
| 4. pharynx                     | 10. supreme   |
| 5. ear                         | 11. cavernous |
| 6. lung                        | 12. tuber     |

### 2. *Translate into Latin. Form Genitive singular:*

1. gluteus maximus muscle
2. internal thoracic vein
3. sulcus palatĭnus
4. ligamentum profundum
5. fascia thoracĭca
6. vena sinistra
7. ligamentum transversum

### 3. *Translate into English:*

1. muscŭlus levātor scapŭlae
2. articulatio capĭtis costae
3. glandŭlae cervicāles
4. forāmen apĭcis dentis

5. ossa cranii
6. foramina venarum minimarum
7. ductus sublinguales minores

### 13.4 HOMEWORK

1. Perform all tasks of the Final Test sample.
2. Practice Exercises No. 1, 2, 4, 6 – orally, No. 3, 5, 7 – in written form.

### 13.5 EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Translate into Latin, write the dictionary form of the following nouns:**

fold	network	tympanic cavity
plexus	porta	body
tuber	bulb	abdomen
space	fauces	aqueduct
retina	alveolus	surface
leg	arm	jugum
cartilage	limb	joint

**Exercise 2. Translate into Latin, write the dictionary form of the following adjectives:**

ethmoidal	lumbar	lingual
osseous	superior	intercostal
semilunar	gluteal	minimus, smallest
parietal	cavernous	orbital
occipital	inferior	gastric
temporal	interradicular	widest
greater	accessory	scalene
lesser	pterygoid	simple
longest	posterior	right
supreme	fibular	transverse
petrosal	deep	superficial

**Exercise 3. Translate into Latin, make grammatical agreement of nouns and adjectives:**

Fold (palatine, transverse, semilunar); border (medial, parietal, posterior, sphenoid, superior); part (cochlear, petrosal, lumbar, transverse); canal (incisive); notch (ethmoidal, frontal, parietal, pterygoid); ligament (transverse, superficial, lateral, left); nerve (cervical, lateral, maxillary, anterior, frontal); muscles (long,

internal, anterior); ganglia (lumbar, thoracic); branches (articular, temporal, mental, zygomatic, orbital, gastric); spines (mental, palatine); processes (pterygoid); veins (cavernous, peroneal); ligaments (accessory, oblique).

**Exercise 4. *Translate into English:***

Cornu minus, septum orbitāle, ductus sublinguālis minor, forāmen cervicāle, plexus cavernōsus, tubercūlum thyreoideum, cellūla ethmoidālis, nervus petrōsus, radix craniālis, truncus lumbālis, pars serrāta, ganglion vertebrāle, ramus occipitālis, valvūla semilunāris, os temporāle.

**Exercise 5. *Translate into Latin, form Nominative plural and Genitive plural:***

Lesser horn, intercostal space, anterior ethmoidal foramen, lesser cartilage, incisive canal, blood vessel, palatine suture, occipital branch, nasal gland, cavernous plexus, alveolar foramen, inferior articular process, parietal bone, ethmoidal sinus, inferior incisor tooth, gluteal bursa, greater wing, minor sublingual duct, fibrous sheath, pterygoid venous plexus, external oblique muscle.

**Exercise 6. *Read, translate into English:***

Cornu superius cartilaginis thyreoideae, muscūlus spinōsus colli, muscūlus flexor digitōrum superficiālis, forāmen ethmoidāle anterius, rami mediāles ramōrum dorsalium nervōrum cervicalium, nucleus posterior, crus anterius capsūlae internae, ostium venae cavae inferiōris, radīces craniāles, rete venōsum dorsāle pedis, muscūli abdominis, ligamenta cranii, rami nasāles interni nervi ethmoidālis anteriōris, venae centrāles hepātis, bursae muscūli glutāei, muscūlus obliquus abdominis externus, corpus femōris, tunīca musculāris ventricūli, crus simplex, ramus arteriae auriculāris posteriōris, margo superior.

**Exercise 7. *Translate into Latin:***

Transverse muscle of the tongue, right and left lateral canals, long levator muscles of ribs, extensor pollicis brevis muscle, tendinous sheaths of toes, left lobe of liver, lateral nerve of the femur, anterior leg region, interanal foramen, bursa of teres major muscle, inferior lateral nerve of brachium, sulcus of lesser petrosal nerve, outer sheath of the nerve, fold of left vena cava, cochlear duct of middle ear, deep vertebral arteries, broad ligaments of uterus, right gastric lymph nodes, bones of face, regions of head, simple bony limb, skin glands, transverse cervical veins, muscular branches of deep fibular nerve, central arteries of the kidney, medial surface of incisor and canine teeth.

## Latin – English Vocabulary

<b>A</b>	
abdōmen, ĩnis n	abdomen
accessorius, a, um	accessory
acromion, i n	acromial process
ala, ae f	wing
alāris, e	alar
alveolāris, e	alveolar
alveolus, i m	alveolus, alveole
anatomĭcus, a, um	anatomical
angŭlus, i m	angle
anterior, ius	anterior
anus, i m	anus
aorta, ae f	aorta
aortĭcus, a, um	aortic
apertŭra, ae f	opening
apex, ĩcis m	apex
aquaeductus, us m	aqueduct
arcus, us m	arch
arteria, ae f	artery
arteriōsus, a, um	arterial
articulāris, e	articular
articulatio, ōnis f	joint
atrium, i n (cordis)	atrium, auricle
auriculāris, e	auricular
auris, is f	ear
axis, is f	axis, C2
<b>B</b>	
basis, is f	base

brachŭum, i n	arm
brevis, e	short
bulbus, i m	bulb
bursa, ae f	sac or saclike cavity
<b>C</b>	
callōsus, a, um	callosum, callous
canalicŭlus, i m	channel or tubular passage
canālis, is m	channel
canīnus, a, um	canine
capillāris, e	capillary
capsŭla, ae f	capsule
caput, ŭtis n	head
carotīcus, a um	carotid
cartilāgo, ŭnis f	cartilage
cavernōsus, a, um	cavernosus, cavernous
cavitas, ātis f	cavity
cavus, a, um	hollow
centrālis, e	central
cervicālis, e	cervical
cervix, ūcis f	neck
chorda, ae f	cord or sinew
cochlea, ae f	cochlea (spiral tube) (from snail)
cochleāris, e	cochlear
collum, i n	neck or necklike part
columna, ae f	column
commūnis, e	common
composītus, a, um	composite, complex
concha, ae f	concha (a shell-shaped structure)
cor, cordis n	heart
cornu, us n	horn
corpus, ōris n	body
costa, ae f	rib

costālis, e	costal
craniālis, e	cranial
cranĭum, i n	skull
crista, ae f	crest
crus, cruris n	crus, limb, leg
<b>D</b>	
dens canĭnus	canine tooth
dens incisĭvus	incisor
dens molāris	molar tooth
dens, dentis m	tooth
dentālis, e	dental
dexter, tra, trum	right (on the right-hand side)
digĭtus, i m	finger
dorsālis, e	dorsal
dorsum, i n	back
ductus, us m	duct
<b>E</b>	
encephālon, i n	brain
et	and
ethmoidālis, e	ethmoidal, cribriform
extensor, ōris m	extensor
externus, a, um	external
<b>F</b>	
faciālis, e	facial
facies, ēi f	surface, face
fascia, ae f	fascia (a band of fibrous tissue)
fauces, ium f (pl)	fauces (pl), throat
femur, ōris n	thigh
fibrōsus, a, um	fibrous
fĭbŭla, ae f	splint-bone
fibulāris, e	fibular

fissūra, ae f	fissure
flavus, a, um	yellow
flexor, ōris m	flexor
flexūra, ae f	flexure
forāmen, ĩnis n	opening
fossa, ae f	trench (a hollow or depressed area)
fovea, ae f	pit (small pit or depression)
foveōla, ae f	pit
frontālis, e	frontal (related to the forehead)
fundus, i m	bottom or base
<b>G</b>	
ganglion, i n	ganglion, nerve-knot
gaster, tris f	stomach
gastrĭcus, a, um	gastric
gingĭva, ae f	gum
glandŭla, ae f	gland
glutaeus, a, um	gluteal
<b>H</b>	
hepar, ātis n	liver
horizontālis, e	horizontal
<b>I</b>	
impressio, ōnis f	impression
incisūra, ae f	incisure, notch
incisĭvus, a, um	incisive
inferior, ius	inferior
interalveolāris, e	interalveolar
intercostālis, e	intercostal
interlobulāris, e	interlobular
internus, a, um	internal
interradiculāris, e	interradicular
interspinōsus, a, um	interspinous

**J**

jugulāris, e  
jugum, i n

jugular  
jugum, yoke

**L**

labium, i n  
lamīna, ae f  
laterālis, e  
latissīmus, a, um  
latus, a, um  
liber, ěra, ěrum  
lien, ēnis m  
ligamentum, i n  
linea, ae f  
lingua, ae f  
linguālis, e  
longissīmus, a, um  
lobus, i m  
longus, a, um  
lumbālis, e  
lymphatīcus, a, um

lip  
plate, layer  
lateral  
latissimus, widest  
broad  
free  
spleen  
ligament  
line  
tongue  
lingual  
longissimus, longest  
lobe  
long  
lumbar  
lymphatic

**M**

magnus, a, um  
major, jus  
mandibŭla, ae f  
manus, us f  
margo, ĩnis m  
massa, ae f  
maxilla, ae f  
maxillāris, e  
maxīmus, a, um  
mediālis, e

great  
greater, great, major  
lower jaw  
hand  
boarder  
mass  
upper jaw  
maxillary  
maximus, largest  
medial

mater, tris f	mater
medius, a, um	middle
medulla ossium	bone marrow
medulla, ae f	medulla (marrowlike structure)
membrum, i n	limb
mentālis, e	mental
minīmus, a, um	minimus, smallest
minor, us	lesser, small, minor
musculus adductor (ōris m)	adductor muscle
musculus constrictor (ōris m)	constrictor muscle
musculus depressor (ōris m)	depressor muscle
musculus extensor (ōris m)	extensor muscle
musculus flexor (ōris m)	flexor muscle
musculus levātor (ōris m)	levātor muscle
musculus sphincter (ēris m)	sphincter muscle
musculus tensor (ōris m)	tensor muscle
musculus abductor (ōris m)	abductor muscle
musculus rotātor (ōris m)	rotātor muscle
musculus, i m	muscle
<b>N</b>	
nasālis , e	nasal
nasus, i m	nose
nervōsus, a, um	nervous
nervus, i m	nerve
nodūlus, i m	nodule
nodus, i m	node
nucha, ae f	neck
nucleus, i m	nucleus
<b>O</b>	
obliquus, a, um	oblique
occipitālis, e	occipital

ocūlus, i m	eye
oesophāgus, i m	oesophagus
orbīta, ae f	orbit
orbitālis, e	orbital
os, ossis n	bone
osseus, a, um	osseous
ovālis, e	oval
<b>P</b>	
palatīnus, a, um	palatine
palātum, i n	palate
palmāris, e	palmar
papīlla, ae f	papilla ( <i>a small nipple-like projection</i> )
paries, ětis m	wall
parietālis, e	parietal
pars, partis f	part
parvus, a, um	small
pectorālis, e	pectoral
pelvis, is f	pelvis
peronaeus, a, um	peroneal
pes, pedis m	foot
petrōsus, a, um	petrous
pharynx, yngis m	pharynx ( <i>throat</i> )
plexus, us m	plexus ( <i>a network of veins or nerves</i> )
plica, ae f	ridge, fold
porta, ae f	entrance <i>or</i> gateway
posterior, ius	posterior
processus, us m	process, outgrowth
profundus, a, um	deep
protuberantia, ae f	protuberance, prominence
pterygoideus, a, um	pterygoid
pulmo, ōnis m	lung

## R

radius, i m	radial bone
radix, ĩcis f	root
ramus, i m	branch
regio, ōnis f	region
ren, renis m	kidney
renālis, e	renal
rete, is n	rete, network
retinacŭlum, i n	retinaculum, frenulum
ruber, bra, brum	red

## S

scalēnus, a, um	scalene
scapŭla, ae f	shoulder-blade
sella, ae f	saddle ( <i>saddle-shaped depression</i> )
semilunāris, e	semilunar
septum, i n	partition
serrātus, a, um	serrate
simplex, ĩcis	simple
sinister, tra, trum	left ( <i>on the left-hand side</i> )
sinus, us m	sinus
sinusoideus, a, um	sinusoid
spatium, i n	space
sphenoidālis, e	sphenoidal, cuneiforme
spina, ae f	spine
spinālis, e	spinal
spinōsus, a, um	spinous
stratum, i n	layer
sublinguālis, e	sublingual
sulcus, i m	furrow
superficiālis, e	superficial
superior, ius	superior

suprēmus, a, um	supreme, highest
sutūra, ae f	suture, stitch
systema, ātis n	system
<b>T</b>	
temporālis, e	temporal
tendo, ĩnis m	tendon
teres, ětis	round
thoracĭcus, a, um	thoracic
thyreoideus, a, um	thyroid
tibia, ae f	shinbone
tibiālis, e	tibial
trachĕa, ae f	windpipe ( <i>the air passage extending from the throat</i> )
transversus, a, um	transverse
trigeminālis, e	trigeminal
trochleāris, e	trochlear
truncus, i m	trunk
tuber, ěris n	tubercle
tubercŭlum, i n	tubercle
tuberosĭtas, ātis f	tuberosity
tunĭca, ae f	tunic <i>or</i> coat
tympanum, i n	tympanic cavity
<b>U</b>	
utĕrus, i m	uterus, womb
<b>V</b>	
vagĭna, ae f	vagina ( <i>any sheath or sheathlike structure</i> )
valvŭla, ae f	valve
vas, vasis n	vessel
vena, ae f	vein
venōsus, a, um	venous

ventricŭlus, i m vertebra, ae f vertebrālis, e vestibŭlum, i n	ventricle, stomach vertebra, spinal bone vertebral vestibule
<b>Z</b>	
zygomatĭcus, a, um	zygomatic

## English – Latin Vocabulary

<b>A</b>	
abdomen	abdōmen, ĩnis n
abductor muscle	muscŭlus abductor (ōris m)
accessory	accessorius, a, um
adductor muscle	muscŭlus adductor (ōris m)
alar	alāris, e
alveolar	alveolāris, e
alveolus, alveole	alveolus, i m
angle	angŭlus, i m
anterior	anterior, ius
anus	anus, i m
aorta	aorta, ae f
apex	apex, ĩcis m
aqueduct	aquaeductus, us m
arch	arcus, us m
arm	brachium, i n
artery	artēria, ae f
articular	articulāris, e
auricular	auriculāris, e
axis, C2	axis, is m
<b>B</b>	
back	dorsum, i n
base	basis, is f
boarder	margo, ĩnis m
body	corpus, ōris n
bone	os, ossis n
bone marrow	medulla ossium
bottom or base	fundus, i m
branch	ramus, i m
broad	latus, a, um
<b>C</b>	
callosum, callous	callōsus, a, um
canine tooth	dens canīnus (us, a, um)
capillary	capillāris, e
capsule	cāpsula, ae f
carotid	carotīcus, a, um
cartilage	cartilāgo, ĩnis f

cavernosus, cavernous cavity central cervical chanel channel or tubular passage cochlea column common composite, complex concha constrictor muscle cord or sinew cranial crest crus, limb, leg	cavernōsus, a, um cavitas, ātis f centrālis, e cervicālis, e canālis, is m canalicūlus, i m cóchlea, ae f colúmna, ae f commūnis, e composītus, a, um cóncha, ae f muscūlus constrictor (ōris m) chórda, ae f craniālis, e crísta, ae f crus, cruris n
<b>D</b>	
deep dental depressor muscle dorsal duct	profundus, a, um dentālis, e muscūlus depressor (ōris m) dorsālis, e ductus, us m
<b>E</b>	
ear entrance or gateway ethmoidal, cribriform extensor muscle external eye	auris, is f pórta, ae f ethmoidālis, e muscūlus extensor (ōris m) externus, a, um ocūlus, i m
<b>F</b>	
facial fascia fauces (pl), throat fibrous fibular finger fissure flexor muscle	faciālis, e fáscia, ae f fauces, ium f (plural) fibrōsus, a, um fibulāris, e digītus, i m fissūra, ae f muscūlus flexor (ōris m)

flexure	flexúra, ae f
foot	pes, pedis m
free	liber, ěra, ěrum
frontal	frontālis, e
furrow	sulcus, i m
<b>G</b>	
ganglion, nerve-knot	ganglĭon, i n
gastric	gastrĭcus, a, um
gland	glándula, ae f
gluteal	glutáeus, a, um
great	magnus, a, um
greater, great, major	major, jus
gum	gingíva, ae f
<b>H</b>	
hand	manus, us f
head	caput, ĭtis n
heart	cor, cordis n
hollow	cavus, a, um
horizontal	horizontālis, e
horn	cornu, us n
<b>I</b>	
impression	impressio, ōnis f
incisor	dens incisĭvus (us, a, um)
incisure, notch	incisúra, ae f
inferior	inferior, ius
interalveolar	interalveolāris, e
intercostal	intercostālis, e
interlobular	interlobulāris, e
internal	internus, a, um
interradicular	interradiculāris, e
interspinous	interspinŏsus, a, um
<b>J</b>	
joint	articulatio, ōnis f
jugum, yoke	jugum, i n

<b>K</b>	
kidney	ren, renis m
<b>L</b>	
lateral	laterālis, e
latissimus, widest	latissīmus, a, um
layer	stratum, i n
left (on the left-hand side)	sinister, tra, trum
lesser, small, minor	minor, us
levātor muscle	muscūlus levātor (ōris m)
ligament	ligamentum, i n
limb	membrum, i n
line	línea, ae f
lingual	linguālis, e
lip	labium, i n
liver	hepar, ātis n
long	longus, a, um
longissimus, longest	longissīmus, a, um
lower jaw	mandíbula, ae f
lumbar	lumbālis, e
lung	pulmo, ōnis m
lymphatic	lymphatīcus, a, um
<b>M</b>	
mass	massa, ae f
maxillary	maxillāris, e
maximus, largest	maxīmus, a, um
medial	mediālis, e
medulla (marrow-like structure)	medulla, ae f
mental	mentālis, e
middle	medius, a, um
minimus, smallest	minīmus, a, um
molar tooth	dens molāris (is, e)
muscle	muscūlus, i m
<b>N</b>	
nasal	nasālis, e

neck or necklike part	collum, i n
nerve	nervus, i m
nervous	nervōsus, a, um
node	nodus, i m
nodule	nodūlus, i m
nose	nasus, i m
nucleus	nucleus, i m
<b>O</b>	
oblique	oblīquus, a, um
occipital	occipitālis, e
opening	apertúra, ae f
opening	forāmen, ĩnis n
orbit	órbita, ae f
orbital	orbitālis, e
osseous	ossēus, a, um
oval	ovālis, e
<b>P</b>	
palate	palātum, i n
palatine	palatīnus, a, um
palmar	palmāris, e
papilla	papilla, ae f
parietal	parietālis, e
part	pars, partis f
partition	septum, i n
pectoral	pectorālis, e
pelvis	pelvis, is f
peroneal	peronāeus, a, um
petrous	petrōsus, a, um
pharynx (throat)	pharynx, yngis m
pit	foveōla, ae f
pit	fóvea, ae f
plate, layer	lámina, ae f
plexus	plexus, us m
posterior	posterior, ius
process, outgrowth	processus, us m
protuberance, prominence	protuberántia, ae f

pterygoid	pterygoidĕus, a, um
<b>R</b>	
radial bone	radius, i m
red	ruber, bra, brum
region	regio, ōnis f
renal	renālis, e
rete, network	rete, is n
retinaculum, frenulum	retinacŭlum, i n
rib	cósta, ae f
ridge, fold	plica, ae f
right	dexter, tra, trum
root	radix, ĩcis f
rotātor muscle	muscŭlus rotātor (ōris m)
round	teres, ětis
<b>S</b>	
sac or saclike cavity	bŭrsa, ae f
saddle	sĕlla, ae f
scalene	scalĕnus, a, um
semilunar	semilunāris, e
serrate	serrātus, a, um
shinbone	tĭbia, ae f
shoulder-blade	scápula, ae f
simple	simplex, ĩcis
sinus	sinus, us m
sinusoid	sinusoideus, a, um
skull	cranium, i n
small	parvus, a, um
space	spatium, i n
sphenoidal, cuneiforme	sphenoidālis, e
sphincter muscle	muscŭlus sphincter (ēris m)
spinal	spinālis, e
spine	spína, ae f
spinous	spinōsus, a, um
spleen	lien, ēnis m
splint-bone	fĭbula, ae f
stomach	gaster, tris f

sublingual	sublinguālis, e
superficial	superficiālis, e
superior	superior, ius
supreme, highest	suprēmus, a, um
surface, face	facies, ēi f
suture, stitch	sutúra, ae f
system	systema, ātis n
<b>T</b>	
temporal	temporālis, e
tendon	tendo, ĩnis m
tensor muscle	musculus tensor (ōris m)
thigh	femur, ōris n
thoracic	thoracicus, a, um
thyroid	thyroidēus, a, um
tibial	tibiālis, e
tongue	lĭngua, ae f
tooth	dens, dentis m
transverse	transversus, a, um
trench	fóssa, ae f
trigeminal	trigeminālis, e
trochlear	trochleāris
trunk	truncus, i m
tubercle	tuber, ěris n
tubercle	tubercŭlum, i n
tuberosity	tuberositas, ātis f
tunic or coat	túnica, ae f
tympanic cavity	tympanum, i n
<b>U</b>	
upper jaw	maxílla, ae f
uterus, womb	utĕrus, i m
<b>V</b>	
vagina	vagína, ae f
valve	válvula, ae f
vein	véna, ae f
venous	venōsus, a, um
ventricle, stomach	ventricŭlus, i m

vertebra, spinal bone vertebral vessel vestibule	vértebra, ae f vertebrālis, e vas, vasis n vestibŭlum, i n
<b>W</b>	
wall wing windpipe	paries, ětis m ála, ae f trachéa, ae f
<b>Y</b>	
yellow	flavus, a, um
<b>Z</b>	
zygomatic	zygomatĭcus, a, um

# Latin Pharmaceutical Terminology and Medical Prescription

**Introduction  
to Latin  
Pharmaceutical  
Terminology**

**Lesson  
1**

## 1.1 INTRODUCTION TO THE PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY. BASIC PHARMACEUTICAL CONCEPTS

**Pharmaceutical Terminology** is the terminology used in PHARMACY (the word derives from the Greek *pharmacon* – «drug, medicine») – an area in the health sciences that deals with the preparation, dispensing, and appropriate use of medicines.

The pharmaceutical terminology is the area where Latin has been traditionally preserved. The official names of the drugs and adjuvant substances are registered in the Latin language. For prescribing pharmaceutical drugs a doctor has to acquire the specific pharmaceutical vocabulary as well as a model of the grammatical structure of the prescription-related Latin text.

### Basic pharmaceutical concepts

- **Pharmaceutical starting material** – is an *active pharmaceutical ingredient* (API) or an *excipient* intended or designated for use in the production of a pharmaceutical product.
  - **Active pharmaceutical ingredient (API)** – chemical compound with pharmacological (or other direct) effect intended for used in diagnosis, treatment or prevention of diseases.
  - **Excipients** – a pharmacologically inactive substance used as a carrier for the active ingredients of a medication. In many cases API (e.g., acetylsalicylic acid) may not be easily administered and absorbed by the human body, in such cases the substance may be dissolved into or mixed with an excipient.
- **Pharmaceutical drug** (also referred to as *medicine, medication* or *medicament*) is any chemical substance or chemical compound intended for use in the medical diagnosis, cure, treatment or prevention of disease.
  - Medications may be divided into **over-the-counter drugs (OTC)** which may be available without special restrictions, and **prescription only medicine (POM)**, which must be prescribed by a medical practitioner.
- **Pharmaceutical dosage form** (also referred to as *dosage form - DF*) – is the physical form of a dose of a chemical compound used as a medication intended for administration or consumption. Common dosage forms include *tablet, capsule, pill, syrup, aerosol, powder* and many others.
- **Pharmaceutical preparation (PP)** - particular *pharmaceutical product* containing active and inactive pharmaceutical ingredients formulated into the particular *dosage form*.

For the designation of pharmaceutical drugs two groups of names are used:

- 1) **International Nonproprietary Name (INN;** also known as **rINN**, for recommended International Nonproprietary Names and **Generic Name**) is the official non-proprietary or generic name given to a pharmaceutical substance by the World Health Organization (WHO). WHO issues INN names in English, Latin, French, Russian, Spanish, Arabic and Chinese. Each INN is a unique name that is globally recognized and is a public property. A nonproprietary name is also known as a *generic name*. Generic names are intended to be used in pharmacopoeias, labeling, advertising, drug regulation and scientific literature. The INN system began operating in 1953. So far, some 8000 names have been designated as INNs, and this number is growing every year by some 120-150 new INNs.
- 2) **Proprietary Name** is a brand name or trademark, registered with the patent office, under which a pharmaceutical substance is marketed.

For example, the chemical substance *N*-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-acetamide, known as INN name **paracetamol** has many proprietary names: *Tylenol*, *Panadol*, *Panamax*, *Perdolan*, *Calpol*, *Doliprane*, *Tachipirina*, *Ben-u-ron*, *Atasol*, *Adol* and others.

## 1.2 RULES FOR CAPITALIZATION IN PHARMACEUTICAL TERMS

The following pharmaceutical terms **are always capitalized**:

1. Names of pharmaceutical drugs (*e.g.*, *Raunatinum*).
2. Names of medicinal plants (*e.g.*, *Crataegus*).
3. Names of chemical elements (*e.g.*, *Hydrargyrum*).
4. Words which are used as names of pharmaceutical drugs (*Sacchārum* – sugar, *Amylum* – starch, *Gelatīna* – gelatin and some others).
5. Each prescription line in prescriptions.
6. Capitalized within pharmaceutical terms are the following words which are usually not capitalized: **Acidum** acetylsalicylicum – acetylsalicylic acid, **Aqua** destillāta – distilled water, **Vitaminum** B<sub>12</sub> – vitamin B<sub>12</sub>).

**Not capitalized** are:

1. Names of pharmaceutical dosage forms within the pharmaceutical term (*e.g.*, *Pulvis extracti Belladonnae*).
2. Adjectives (*e.g.*, *Mentha piperīta*).
3. Words *oxydum*, *peroxydum*, *hydroxydum* in the names of oxides (*e.g.*, *Zinci oxydum*).
4. Names of parts of plants within the pharmaceutical term (*e.g.*, *Infusum radīcis Althaeae*).
5. Names of anions within the names of salts (*e.g.*, *Magnesii sulfas*).

6. Set prescription phrases: *in vitro nigro*, *contra tussim*, *in charta cerata* and *others*.

**However you should memorize that every pharmaceutical term is traditionally capitalized** (in nomenclatures, reference books, on labels etc.). That is how you should write pharmaceutical terms in exercises and tests:

- Solutio Camphorae – camphor solution,
- Flores Chamomillae – chamomile flowers.

### 1.3 MEDICINAL PLANTS AND THEIR PARTS

**Medicinal plant** is a plant (wild or cultivated) used for medicinal purposes. Medicinal plants have always been considered a healthy source of life for all people. Therapeutical properties of medical plants are very useful in healing various diseases and the advantage of these medicinal plants is being 100% natural.

It has been estimated that in developed countries such as United States, plant drugs constitute as much as 25% of the total drugs, while in fast developing countries such as China and India, the contribution is as much as 80%. Of the 2,500,000 higher plant species on earth, at least 35,000 are estimated to have medicinal value. Medicinal ingredients are present in different parts of the plant *like root, stem, bark, leaf, flower, fruit or plant exudates*. For example, *oak bark, plantain leaves, buckthorn bark, everlasting flowers, motherwort herb, chamomile flowers, flax seeds, liquorice roots, mint leaves, hawthorn flowers, rose hips, valerian rhizome*.

#### Names of plant parts

1) cortex, ĩcis m	bark
2) flos, floris m	flower
3) folium, i n	leaf
4) fructus, us m	fruit
5) gemma, ae f	gemma
6) herba, ae f	herb
7) radix, ĩcis f	root
8) rhizōma, ātis n	rhizome
9) semen, ĩnis n	seed

## 1.4 PHARMACEUTICAL DOSAGE FORMS

According to the overall physical properties of dosage forms one can distinguish: *liquid dosage forms, semisolid dosage forms, solid dosage forms, gaseous dosage forms.*

You should memorize the pharmaceutical dosage forms as follows:

<b>Liquid dosage forms (Liquids)</b>		
<b>1.</b>	<b>Solutio, ōnis f</b>	solution
<i>Solutions are dosage forms prepared by dissolving the active ingredients in an aqueous or non aqueous solvent (solvent is a liquid, solid, or gas that dissolves another solid, liquid, or gas, resulting in a solution).</i>		
<b>2.</b>	<b>Tinctura, ae f</b>	tincture
<i>A tincture is an alcoholic extract (e.g. of leaves or other plant material). To qualify as a tincture, the alcoholic extract is to have an ethanol percentage of at least 40-60%.</i>		
<b>3.</b>	<b>Infusum, i n</b>	infusion
<i>An infusion is the outcome of steeping plants with desired chemical compounds and/or flavors in water or oil.</i>		
<b>4.</b>	<b>Decoctum, i n</b>	decoction
<i>A decoction is a method of extraction by boiling of herbal or plant material, which may include stems, roots, bark and rhizomes.</i>		
<b>5.</b>	<b>Suspensio, ōnis f</b>	suspension
<i>A liquid dosage form that contains solid particles dispersed in a liquid vehicle.</i>		
<b>6.</b>	<b>Emulsum, i n</b>	emulsion
<i>An emulsion is a mixture of two or more immiscible (unblendable) liquids.</i>		
<b>7.</b>	<b>Sirupus, i m</b>	syrup
<i>An oral solution containing high concentrations of sucrose or other sugars</i>		
<b>8.</b>	<b>Mucilago, ĩnis f</b>	mucilage
<i>A mucilage is a thick, gluey substance. It is used in medicine for its demulcent properties.</i>		
<b>9.</b>	<b>Extractum, i n (fluidum)</b>	extract
<i>An extract is a substance made by extracting a part of a raw material, often by using a solvent such as ethanol or water.</i>		
<b>10.</b>	<b>Olĕum, i n</b>	oil
<i>An unctuous substance which is liquid, or easily liquefiable, on warming, and is insoluble in water.</i>		
<b>Semisolid dosage forms (Semisolids)</b>		
<b>11.</b>	<b>Unguentum, i n</b>	ointment

<i>An ointment is a homogeneous, viscous, semi-solid preparation with a high viscosity, that is intended for external application to the skin or mucous membranes.</i>		
<b>12.</b>	<b>Gelum, i n</b>	gel
<i>A semisolid dosage form that contains a gelling agent to provide stiffness to a solution or a colloidal dispersion. A gel may contain suspended particles.</i>		
<b>13.</b>	<b>Creomor, ōris m</b>	cream
<i>Semisolid preparation containing one or more drug substances dissolved or dispersed in a suitable base.</i>		
<b>14.</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Suppositorium, i n</b></li> <li>• <b>Suppositorium rectāle (vagināle, urethrale)</b></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• suppository</li> <li>• rectal (vaginal, urethral) suppository</li> </ul>
<i>A suppository is a drug delivery system that is inserted into the rectum (rectal suppository), vagina (vaginal suppository) or urethra (urethral suppository), where it dissolves.</i>		
<b>15.</b>	<b>Linimentum, i n</b>	liniment
<i>A solution or mixture of various substances in oil, alcoholic solutions of soap, or emulsions intended for external application. They are applied with rubbing to the affected area.</i>		
<b>16.</b>	<b>Pasta, ae f</b>	paste
<i>A pasta is an ointment in which a powder is suspended; combines three agents - oil, water, and powder.</i>		
<b>17.</b>	<b>Emplastrum, i n</b>	plaster
<i>Substance intended for external application made of such materials and of such consistency as to adhere to the skin and attach to a dressing.</i>		
<b>18.</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Membranūla (ae f)</b></li> <li>• <b>Membranūla (ae f) ophthalmīca (us, a, um) (Lamella ophthalmīca)</b></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>medical film</li> <li>ophthalmic film</li> </ul>
<i>A medical film is a drug delivery system in the form of a polymeric film that releases the drug over an extended period. The ophthalmic films are applied to the conjunctival bag and have local action.</i>		
<b>19.</b>	<b>Emplastrum transdermale</b>	transdermal patch
<i>A transdermal patch is a medicated adhesive patch that is placed on the skin to deliver a specific dose of medication through the skin and into the bloodstream.</i>		
<b>Solid dosage forms</b>		
<b>20.</b>	<b>Tabuletta, ae f</b>	tablet
<i>A compressed solid dosage form containing medicinal substances. The term "tablet" (from the Latin tabuletta) is associated with the appearance of the dosage form i.e. tablets are small disc-like or cylindrical specimens).</i>		
<b>21.</b>	<b>Capsūla, ae f</b>	capsule

<i>A solid oral dosage form consisting of a shell and a filling. Capsule shells may be made from gelatin, starch, or cellulose, or other suitable materials, may be soft or hard, and are filled with solid or liquid ingredients.</i>		
<b>22.</b>	<b>Microcapsūla, ae f</b>	microcapsule
<i>A very small capsule designed to release its contents when broken (typically, after being swallowed).</i>		
<b>23.</b>	<b>Dragées (only plural)</b>	pill, dragée
<i>A pill is a small, round, solid pharmacological oral dosage form. Pills are made by mixing the active ingredients with an excipient such as glucose syrup</i>		
<b>24.</b>	<b>Pulvis, ėris m</b>	powder
<i>An intimate mixture of dry, finely divided drugs and/or chemicals that may be intended for internal or external use.</i>		
<b>25.</b>	<b>Granūlum, i n</b>	granule
<i>A small medicinal particle or grain.</i>		
<b>26.</b>	<b>Stilus (i m) medicinalis (e)</b>	stick (medicinal)
<i>Small solid cylinders of gelatin, glyco-gelatin mass, or cacao-butter, impregnated with medicine, to be inserted into urethra, vagina, rectum.</i>		
<b>27.</b>	<b>Carāmel, ėllis n</b>	caramel
<i>A dosage form made from caramelized sugar and pharmaceutical substance. The caramelized sugar alleviates the unpleasant taste.</i>		
<b>28.</b>	<b>Pilūla, ae f</b>	pill
<i>A pill is a small, round, solid pharmacological oral dosage form.</i>		
<b>Gaseous dosage forms</b>		
<b>29.</b>	<b>Aĕrosōlum, i n</b>	aerosol
<i>Products packaged under pressure that contain therapeutically active ingredients that are released as a fine mist, spray or foam upon activation of an appropriate valve system.</i>		
<b>30.</b>	<b>Spray</b>	spray
<i>Sprays are solutions of drugs in aqueous vehicles and are applied to the mucous membrane of the nose and throat by means of an atomizer nebulizer.</i>		
<b>Herbal medicinal products</b>		
<b>31.</b>	<b>Specĕs, ĕrum f (only plural)</b>	medicinal plant mixture (herbal plant mixture)
<i>A medicinal preparations made from certain medicinal plants.</i>		
<b>32.</b>	<b>Brikĕtum, i n</b>	briquette
<i>Briquettes are made from compressed medicinal plants divided into doses of 5-7.5 g for home-made infusions and decoctions.</i>		
<b>Other dosage forms</b>		

<b>33.</b>	<b>Spongia, ae f</b>	sponge
A porous, interlacing, absorbent material that contains a drug. It is typically used for applying or introducing medication, or for cleansing. A sponge usually retains its shape.		

## 1.5 COMMON STEMS (PART 1)

The pharmaceutical drugs from the same therapeutic or chemical class are usually given names with the same **stem**. Stems are mostly placed word-finally, but in some cases word-initial stems are used:

- *-lol* for beta blockers (e.g. atenolol)
- *-oxetin* for fluoxetine derivatives, a group of antidepressants
- *-pril* for ACE inhibitors (e.g. captopril)
- *io-* for iodine containing radiopharmaceuticals (e.g. iobenguane) etc.

Such stems are called “common stems”.

A **common stem** is a structural component of a pharmaceutical term with the standard spelling and the common definition (pharmaceutical class affiliation).

The knowledge of common stems will help you to write orthographically pharmaceutical terms with the complex spelling and to understand their definition.

The World Health Organization introduced several years ago general principals for devising international nonproprietary names for **new pharmaceutical substances**: to facilitate the translation and pronunciation of INN, “f” should be used instead of “ph”, “t” instead of “th”, “e” instead of “ae” or “oe”, and “i” instead of “y”; the use of the letters “h” and “k” should be avoided. But these principals do not apply to already registered international nonproprietary names.

**Memorize the common stems as follows:**

#	Stem	Definition, English spelling	Examples
1.	<b>-cillin-</b>	antibiotics (penicillins) (-cillin)	Penicillinum
2.	<b>-cyclin- -cycl-</b>	antibiotics (tetracycline derivatives) (-cycline)	Demeclocyclinum Cyclobarbitolum
3.	<b>-menth-</b>	from the Latin <i>mentha</i> - mint	Mentholum Boromentholum
4.	<b>-mycin-, - myc(o)-</b>	antibiotics, produced by <i>Streptomyces</i> strain (-mycin)	Monomycinum Erythromycinum Mycoseptinum
5.	<b>-pyr-</b>	antipyretics (drugs that reduce fever)	“Pyrameinum” Anapyrinum

## 1.6 STRUCTURE OF PHARMACEUTICAL TERMS

1. The vast majority of names of pharmaceutical drugs are **neuter nouns of the second declension** with Nominative ending **-um** (*Ampicillinum*) and Genitive ending **-i** (*Ampicillini*). In pharmaceutical terms ending in *-um* the second to last syllable is always stressed. The English translations of pharmaceutical drugs are the names without any endings, e.g., *ampicillin* or the names ending in *-e*, e.g., *tetracycline*. These names in English are usually not capitalized.
2. The English drug names ending in “-in”, “-ine” and “-ene” are Latinized by changing the “-in” and “-ine” to “-inum” and “-ene” to “-enum” (aspirin – Aspirinum, vaseline – Vaselineum, naphthalene - Naphthalenum).
3. English drug names ending in “-form” are Latinized by changing the “-form” to “-formium” (chloroform – Chloroformium, iodoform – Iodoformium). The Latin Genitive form ends in “-ii” (*Chloroformii*). In these words the third to last syllable is stressed.
4. In the **pharmaceutical preparations** the name of the dosage form is placed on the first position: *solutio, unguentum, tinctura* etc. The name of the pharmaceutical drug in Genitive is placed on the second position and is capitalized: *Solutio Lidocaini – lidocaine solution, Unguentum Tetracyclini – tetracycline ointment*.
5. The adjectives in the pharmaceutical forms are placed **at the end of the term**: *Solutio Tetrachlorethyleni oleosa – tetrachlorethylene oily solution* (however, after the dosage forms *membranulae – films, mixtura – mixtures, spongia – sponges, suppositorium – suppositories* adjectives are placed directly after the name of a dosage form, e.g., *Suppositorium rectale “Anusolum”*).
6. In the names of infusions, tinctures, decoctions and extracts the names of plant parts in Genitive (leaf, root, bark etc.) are placed between the dosage form and the name of the herb: *Infusum foliorum Digitalis – infusion of digitalis leaves*.
7. Some brand names with the complex structure are placed in Latin pharmaceutical preparations in Nominative and in quotes after the dosage form name: *Suppositoria «Anaesthesolum» – anaesthesol suppository*.

## 1.7 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. Define the concepts as follows: “pharmaceutical drug”, “active pharmaceutical ingredient”, “excipient”, “pharmaceutical dosage form”, “pharmaceutical preparation”.
2. Define the concepts as follows: “International Nonproprietary Names”, “Proprietary names”, “common stem”.
3. Explain rules for capitalization in pharmaceutical terms.
4. Name basic parts of medicinal herbs.

5. Name basic groups of pharmaceutical dosage forms and basic pharmaceutical dosage forms in the dictionary form.
6. Define the Latin common stems «-cillin-», «-cyclin-», «-mycin-», «-menth-», «-pyr-».
7. What gender and declension are the Latin pharmaceutical drugs?
8. Explain by an example the structure of a pharmaceutical preparation with an adjective.
9. How are some brand names with the complex structure prescribed?

## 1.8 HOMEWORK

1. Learn the theoretical material of Lesson One.
2. Learn the Vocabulary of this Lesson.
3. Practice Exercises No. 1, 3– orally, 2, 4, 5 – in written form.

## 1.9 VOCABULARY

### *Names of medicinal plants*

1. Aloë, ës f	aloe
2. Althaea, ae f	marshmallow
3. Belladonna, ae f	belladonna
4. Mentha, ae f (piperita)	mint (peppermint)
5. Plantāgo, ĩnis m	plantain
6. Valeriāna, ae f	valerian

### *Names of pharmaceutical dosage forms*

7. decoctum, i n	decoction
8. extractum, i n	extract
9. infūsum, i n	infusion
10. linimentum, i n	liniment
11. olēum, i n	oil
12. pulvis, ěris m	powder
13. solutiō, ōnis f	solution
14. suppositorĳum, i n	suppository
• suppositorĳum rectāle (vagināle)	• rectal (vaginal) suppository
15. tabuletta, ae f	tablet
16. tinctūra, ae f	tincture
17. unguentum, i n	ointment

### *Names of plant parts*

18. flos, floris m	flower
19. folium, i n	leaf
20. radix, īcis f	root

### *Other words*

21. fluīdus, a, um	fluid
22. piperītus, a, um	peppery
23. siccus, a, um	dry

### *Common stems*

24. -cillin-	antibiotics (penicillins)
25. -cyclin- / -cycl-	antibiotics (tetracycline derivatives)
26. -menth-	from the Latin <i>mentha</i> - mint
27. -mycin- / -myc(o)-	antibiotics, produced by <i>Streptomyces</i> strain
28. -pyr-	antipyretics (drugs that reduce fever)

## **1.10 EXERCISES**

**Exercise 1. Read aloud names of the pharmaceutical preparations, translate them into English:**

Solutio Tobramycini, Pulvis Midecamycini, Solutio Piperacillini, Tabulettae Bromhexini, Unguentum Tetracyclini, Solutio Pentastarchi, Tabulettae Pyritinoli, Pulvis Streptomycini, Unguentum Neomycini, Suspensio Triptorelini, Tabulettae Pyrazinamidi, Solutio Dactinomycini.

**Exercise 2. Translate from English into Latin:**

Tablets of neomycin, solution of framycetin, vaginal suppository of clindamycin, tablets of tetracycline, powder of piperacillin, tablets of dipyridamole, ointment of tobramycin, solution of cyclopentolate, powder of *mitomycin*, tablets of *spiramycin*.

**Exercise 3. Translate from Latin into English:**

Radīces Althaeae, Infūsum foliōrum Plantaginis, Extractum foliōrum et radīcum Belladonnae, Extractum radīcis Althaeae siccum, Tabulettae olei Menthae, Extractum Aloēs fluīdum, Folia Menthae piperītae, Succus Plantaginis.

**Exercise 4. *Translate from English into Latin:***

Tincture of valerian, infusion of valerian root, extract of belladonna, dry extract of marshmallow, juice of aloe, roots of valerian, decoction of valerian root, dry extract of belladonna, oil of peppermint, liniment of aloe, extract of valerian, infusion of marshmallow root, tablets of aloe.

**Exercise 5. *Write in Latin the following INN names, find known to you common stems, give their definitions:***

pyrantel, piperacillin, spectinomycin, ampicillin, bleomycin, cyclopentolate, tetracycline, bacampicillin, bencyclane, pyricarbate, capreomycin, cloxacillin, cyclobarbitol, cycloserine, dactinomycin, dipyridamole, framycetin, menthol, oxacillin, neomycin, streptomycin.

**Standard  
Prescription  
Phrases**

**Lesson  
2**

The imperative mood expresses direct commands or requests. In the Latin part of a prescription only the second-person imperative form is used (*you* address):

- **Recīpe** Take; take thou
- **Da** Give
- **Signa** Sign, mark thou, write, label
- **Misce** Mix
- **Sterilīsa!** Sterilize! (after “Sterilīsa” an exclamation point is always used)
- **Da tales doses numēro (20)** Give of such doses 20 in number

### Conjunctive mood

The Latin conjunctive mood has many meanings. Only one meaning “order, instruction, direction” is used in prescriptions. These forms are usually translated from Latin into English with “let it be”. You will have to memorize standard prescription phrases in the conjunctive mood as follows:

- **Detur** Let it be given
- **Signētur** Let it be signed (labeled)
- **Misceātur** Let it be mixed
- **Sterilisētur!** Let it be sterilized! (after “Sterilisētur” an exclamation point is always used)
- **Dentur tales doses numero (20)** Let (20) such doses be given.

**Nota Bene: Prescription phrases in imperative and conjunctive moods have the same meaning: *order, instruction, direction*, therefore they are completely equal and interchangeable. You may use each of them.**

## 2.2 VERB FORMS *FIAT/FIANT* IN PRESCRIPTIONS

In instructions relating to preparations the forms **fiat/fiant** of the Latin verb **fiĕri** are often used:

- *fiat* –let (it) be made (e.g., an emulsion)
- *fiant* – let (them) be made (e.g., suppositories)

Below is given the standard construction:

**Misce, (ut)** → **fiat** + a noun in Nominative singular  
→ **fiant** + a noun in Nominative plural

The following are standard Latin directions relating to preparation with this verbal construction:

- **Misce, fiat emulsum** *Mix to make an emulsion.  
(or: Mix, and let an emulsion be made).*
- **Misce, fiat linimentum** *Mix to make a liniment.*
- **Misce, fiat pasta** *Mix to make a paste.*
- **Misce, fiat pulvis** *Mix to make a powder.*
- **Misce, fiat unguentum** *Mix to make an ointment.*
- **Misce, fiat suppositorium** *Mix to make a suppository.*
- **Misce, fiat suppositorium rectāle (vagināle)** *Mix to make a rectal (vaginal) suppository.*
- **Misce, fiant suppositoria rectalia (vagina)lia)** *Mix to make rectal (vaginal) suppositories.*
- **Misce, fiant species (plural)** *Mix to make species*

Please note well that the *plural* noun forms are used after **fiant**.

The Latin conjunction **ut** is optional.

Please note that in this construction only “misce” but not “misceatur” is used.

## 2.3 COMMON STEMS (PART 2)

Memorize the common stems as follows:

#	Stem	Definition, English spelling	Examples
1.	<b>-cain-</b>	local anaesthetics (-caine-)	<b>Procainum</b> <b>Tetracainum</b>
2.	<b>-cyt-</b>	cytostatics (killing cancer cells) from the Greek <i>cytos</i> -cell	<b>Cytarabinum</b> <b>Cytocristinum</b>
3.	<b>-form-</b>	formic acid derivatives	<b>Xeroformium</b> <b>Iodoformium</b>
4.	<b>-poly-</b>	from the Greek <i>polys</i> – more than one or many	<b>Polyphepanum</b> <b>Polymixini B</b> sulfas
5.	<b>-zep-</b> <b>(-azepam-)</b>	antianxiety drug - diazepam derivatives	<b>Diazepamum</b> <b>Bromazepamum</b>

## 2.4 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. Name the Latin directions to the pharmacist used in the imperative mood and their English equivalents.
2. Name the Latin directions to the pharmacist used in the conjunctive mood and their English equivalents.
3. What is the standard Latin construction with fiat/fiant in instructions relating to preparations?
4. Define the Latin common stems «-cyt-», «-form-», «-poly-», «-cain-», «-zep-».

## 2.5 HOMEWORK

1. Learn the theoretical material of Lesson Two.
2. Learn standard prescription phrases (2.1 and 2.2).
3. Learn the Vocabulary of this Lesson.
4. Practice Exercises No. 1, 3– orally, 2, 4, 5 and 6 – in written form.

## 2.6 VOCABULARY

### *Names of medicinal plants*

- |                      |                           |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Convallaria, ae f | lilly-of-the-valley       |
| 2. Frangŭla, ae f    | buckthorn                 |
| 3. Linum, i n        | flax, linum               |
| 4. Quercus, us f     | oak                       |
| 5. Ricĭnus, i m      | castor (castor oil plant) |

### *Names of pharmaceutical drugs*

- |                      |             |
|----------------------|-------------|
| 6. Amŷlum, i n       | starch      |
| 7. Epinephrinum, i n | epinephrine |
| 8. Oleum Ricĭni      | castor oil  |
| 9. Xeroformium, i n  | xeroform    |

### *Names of pharmaceutical dosage forms*

- |  |                 |
|--|-----------------|
| 10. emplastrum, i n  | plaster         |
| 11. emulsum, i n   | emulsion        |
| 12. granŭlum, i n  | granule         |
| 13. membranŭla (ae f) ophthalmĭca<br>(us, a, um) (lamella ophthalmĭca) | ophthalmic film |

14. mucilāgo, ĩnis f	mucilage
15. pasta, ae f	paste
16. specĳes, ěrum f (ТОЛЬКО МН. ЧИСЛО)	medicinal plant mixture
17. stilus, i m	stick (medicinal)

*Names of plant parts*

18. cortex, ĳcis m	bark
19. semen, ĳnis n	seed

*Common stems*

21. -cain-	local anaesthetics (-caine-)
22. -cyt-	cytostatics (killing cancer cells) - from the Greek <i>cytos</i> - cell
23. -form-	formic acid derivatives
24. -poly-	from the Greek <i>polys</i> – more than one or many
25. -zep-	antianxiety drug - diazepam derivatives

## 2.7 EXERCISES

### **Exercise 1. Translate from Latin into English:**

Recĳpe. Detur. Signa. Sterilisětur! Da tales doses. Misce, fiat linimentum. Misce, fiat unguentum. Misce, fiant suppositoria rectalia (vaginalia). Misce, fiat pasta. Misce, ut fiat pulvis. Misce, ut fiat emulsum.

### **Exercise 2. Translate from English into Latin:**

Give. Mix to make a powder. Let it be signed. Let such doses be given. Mix to make a paste. Mix to make a rectal (vaginal) suppository. Let it be mixed. Let it be sterilized! Mix to make species.

### **Exercise 3. Translate from Latin into English:**

Mucilāgo semĳinum Lini, Emulsum olei Ricĳni, Extractum Frangŭlae fluĳdum, Stilus Mentholi, Folia Plantagĳnis, Radĳces Belladonnae, Pulvis extracti Belladonnae sicci, Tabulettae olei Menthae, Succus Aloěs, Extractum Valeriānae spissum.

### **Exercise 4. Translate from English into Latin:**

flax seeds, oak bark decoction, starch mucilage, plantain seeds powder, castor oil, buckthorn bark decoction, menthol sticks, buckthorn extract, ophthalmic films, valerian roots infusion, buckthorn extract tablets.

**Exercise 5. Translate from Latin into English:**

1. Give 10ml of epinephrine solution.
2. Take 200ml of tincture of valerian root.
3. Give 10ml of menthol oil.
4. Take 30 g of xeroform ointment.
5. Take 5ml of tincture of mint.
6. Sterilize 20ml of castor oil.
7. Take 5 g of ointment of boromenthol.
8. Mix 10ml of tincture of lilly-of-the-valley and 15ml of tincture of valerian.
9. Take 20 g of emulsion of castor oil.
10. Sterilize 200ml of procaine solution.

**Exercise 6. Write in Latin the following INN names, find known to you common stems, give their definitions:**

Cytarabine, carindacillin, formoterol, vancomycin, bumecaine, pyridoxine, lidocaine, polyvinox, levomenthol, diazepam, trimecaine, penicillin, metformin, cytidine, tetrazepam, ticarcillin, minocycline, tetracaine, lorazepam, articaine, natamycin, chloroform, flurazepam, procaine, viomycin, cytochrome c.

Prescription.  
Latin Part  
of Prescription

Lesson  
3

---

Historically, physicians use Latin words and abbreviations in a prescription. In many English-speaking countries the present-day prescriptions are written in English, but many of Latin words and abbreviations are still widely used and must be understood. In East European countries prescriptions are written in Latin.

A prescription is traditionally composed of four parts: a “superscription”, “inscription”, “subscription” and “signature”.

<b>Superscription</b>
The superscription consists of the date of prescription and patient information (name, address, age, etc.). The word “Recipe” (the abbreviation “Rp.:", in English-speaking countries the symbol Rx) separates the superscription of the inscription section. “Recipe” means literally the imperative "take, or in other words, "take the following components and compound this medication for the patient."
<b>Inscription</b>
The inscription is also called the body of the prescription, and provides the names and quantities of the chief ingredients of the prescription. Also in the inscription the dose and dosage form, such as tablet, suppository, capsule etc. are indicated. This section is written in Latin.
<b>Subscription</b>
The subscription contains directions to the pharmacist, compounding instructions or quantities. This section is normally written in Latin.
<b>Signature</b>
The “signature” section contains directions to the patient. This section should be normally written in English, however, physicians continue to insert Latin abbreviations, e.g. "1 cap t.i.d. pc" - "take one capsule three times daily after meals" (the widely used Latin abbreviations please find attached).

The words **cito!** – *quickly, very quickly!* or **statim!** – *immediately!* at the top of a prescription indicate that the prescription is urgently required.

**Repetatur** in the prescriptions means “*Let it be repeated*”; **bis (tres) repetatur** – “*Let it be twice (tree times) repeated*”, **non repetatur** – “*Let it not be repeated*”.

### 3.2 BASIC RULES FOR PRESCRIPTION WRITING

The Latin part of a prescription begins with **Reci**pe and ends with **Signa:**. The direction to the patient following the colon is capitalized and should be normally written in English. The *Signature* is not subject of our study.

The basic rules for prescription writing are as follows:

1. The Latin part of a prescription begins with “Recipe”, this is a form of address of a physician to a pharmacist:

**Recīpe: – Take:**

- The prescription line following *Recīpe:* is capitalized.
- The names of all ingredients of the prescription begin a new line and are capitalized. Under the word “Recipe” a blank space is left – it is the place for service remarks of the pharmacist. If there is not enough space for a ingredient of the prescription in one line it is carried to the next line with the left indent:

Recīpe:   Phenylī salicylātis 3,0  
               Spirītus aethylīci quantum satis  
                   **ad solutiōnem**  
               Vaselīni           ad 30,0  
               Misce, fiat unguentum  
               Da. Signa: *Apply to the skin of the face*

2. The word **Recīpe** may be followed by the *name of a pharmaceutical drug or a dosage form*. The names of **dosage forms** are mainly in Genitive, but they may be also in Accusative singular or plural (see Lesson 4).
3. The names of pharmaceutical drugs following *Recīpe* are placed **in Genitive singular**.

The grammatical structure of the Latin part of the prescription can be shown in the following way:

<i>Take</i>	<i>What? What amount? (Acc.)</i>	<i>Of what? (Gen.)</i>
Recīpe:	10 ml	Tincturae Belladonnae
Take	10 ml	of tincture of atropa belladonna
Recīpe: Tincturae Belladonnae 10 ml		

- After the drug name at the end of each prescription line a **dose** – a quantity of pharmaceutical drugs - is indicated. The doses of pharmaceutical drugs are given in the **metric system**. The quantity of liquid ingredients is indicated in milliliters, grams or drops, the quantity of semisolid or solid ingredients is always indicated in grams:
- **in grams** – the unit sign “g” is not indicated; the quantity in grams is always indicated with decimal points, and a zero is always used after decimal points, e.g.: 10,0 (that is 10 g); 0,25 (that is 0.25 g) etc.
- **in milliliters** – 10 ml (or 10 mL – the United States National Institute of Standards and Technology recommends the use of the uppercase letter **L**,



- The concentration of a solution is indicated as follows:  
*Recīpe: Solutiōnis Camphōrae oleōsae 10% – 100 ml.*

### **Mucilages – Mucilagīnes**

- Mucilage is a thick, gluey substance produced by most plants. It is used in medicine for its demulcent properties.
- After *Recīpe* the Genitive singular form **Mucilagīnis** is used.
- The most common drug preparations with *mucilage* are: *Mucilāgo radīcis Althaeae* (*mucilage of althaea root*), *Mucilāgo Amyli* (*mucilage of starch*).

### **Suspensions – Suspensiōnes**

- A suspension is a heterogeneous fluid containing solid particles that are sufficiently large for sedimentation. An example of a suspension would be sand in water.
- After *Recīpe* the Genitive singular form **Suspensiōnis** is used.
- E.g.: *Recīpe: Suspensiōnis Hydrocortisōni acetātis...*

### **Emulsions – Emulsa**

- An emulsion is a mixture of two or more immiscible liquids. In pharmaceuticals emulsions are frequently used. These are usually oil and water emulsions
- After *Recīpe* the Genitive singular form **Emulsi** is used.
- The most common oils used for oil emulsions are as follows: *Oleum Ricīni – castor oil*, *Oleum Amygdalārum – almond oil*.
- Example of a prescription with an *emulsion*:

Recīpe:      Emulsi olei Amygdalārum      200 ml  
                  Codeini phosphātis                      0,2

Misce. Da. Signa: *По 1 столовой ложке 3 раза в день*

### **Infusions and decoctions – Infūsa et Decocta**

- Decoction is a fluid prepared by boiling of herbal or plant material, which may include stems, roots, bark and rhizomes. An infusion is very similar to a decoction but is used with herbs. Dried herbs or other plants are placed in boiled water for a few minutes, then discarded, and the water drunk as a beverage. A common example is tea.
- After *Recīpe* the Genitive singular forms **Infūsi**, **Decocti** are used.
- After the name of the dosage form plant parts in Genitivus are indicated:
  - \* Bark - cortex (Genitive – cortīcis)
  - \* Root– radix (Genitive – radīcis)

- \* Rhizome – rhizōma (Genitive – rhizomātis)
- \* Leaf – folium (Genitive singular – folii, Genitive plural – foliōrum)
- \* Herb – herba (Genitive – herbae)
- \* Flower – flos (Genitive singular – floris, Genitive plural – florum)
- E.g.: *Recīpe: Decocti corticis Quercus ...*  
*Take: Decoction of oak bark...*

### Tinctures – Tinctūrae

- A tincture is an alcoholic extract of leaves or other plant material. To qualify as a tincture, the alcoholic extract is to have an ethanol percentage of at least 40-60%, sometimes a 90%.
- After *Recīpe* the Genitive singular form **Tinctūrae** is used.
- Пример: *Recīpe: Tinctūrae Valeriānae...*

### Extracts – Extracta

- An extract is a substance made by extracting a part of a raw material, often by using a solvent such as ethanol or water.
- After *Recīpe* the Genitive singular form **Extracti** is used.
- There are fluid extracts (**Extractum fluidum – Extracti fluidi**), dense extracts (**Extractum spissum – Extracti spissi**) and dry extracts (**Extractum siccum – Extracti sicci**).
- E.g.: *Recipe: Extracti Frangūlae fluidi...*

## 3.4 COMMON STEMS (PART 3)

Memorize the common stems as follows:

#	Stem	Definition, English spelling	Examples
1.	<b>-caph-</b>	camphor derivatives	<b>Camphonium</b> <b>Bromcamphora</b>
2.	<b>-ephedr-</b>	alkaloid derived from the plant <i>Ephedra sinica</i>	<b>Ephedrinum</b> <b>Ephedrosanum</b>
3.	<b>-erythr-,</b> <b>-eryth-</b>	from the Greek <i>erythros</i> – red	<b>Erythromycinum</b> <b>Erythaemum</b>
4.	<b>-estr-,</b> <b>-oestr-</b>	estrogens – female sex hormones	<b>Oestradiolum</b> <b>Synoestrolum</b>
5.	<b>-glyc-,</b> <b>-gluc-</b>	from the Greek <i>glykys</i> – sweet	<b>Nitroglycerinum</b> <b>Glucosum</b>
6.	<b>-phyll-</b> <b>-phyllin-</b>	theophylline derivatives (-phylline)	<b>Euphyllinum</b> <b>Theophyllum</b>
7.	<b>-phyt-</b>	from the Greek <i>phyton</i> – plant	<b>Phytinum</b> <b>Phytolysinum</b>
8.	<b>-theo-</b>	from the Latin <i>thea</i> – tee	<b>Theophedrinum</b> <b>Theophyllum</b>

### 3.5 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. What is a prescription?
2. What parts is a prescription composed of?
3. What is the Latin for *very quickly!*, *immediately!*, “*Let it be repeated*”, “*Let it be twice (tree times) repeated*”, “*Let it not be repeated*”?
4. What does the Latin part of a prescription begin with? What does it end with?
5. In what case are pharmaceutical drugs in the prescription indicated after *Recīpe*?
6. How are quantities of pharmaceutical drugs indicated?
7. What is the English for *quantum satis*?
8. How are ingredients in prescriptions in equal quantities indicated?
9. What solutions do you know?
10. What are the most common mucilages?
11. What are the most common oils used for oil emulsions?
12. Name the Latin Genitive singular forms for *bark*, *root*, *rhizome*, *leaf*, *herb*, *flower*.
13. What is the difference between *infusion*, *decoction* and *tincture*?
14. What kinds of extracts do you know?

### 3.6 HOMEWORK

1. Learn the theoretical material of Lesson Three.
2. Learn the Vocabulary of this Lesson .
3. Practice Exercises No. 1, 3 and 4 – in written form; 2 – orally.

### 3.7 VOCABULARY

#### *Names of medicinal plants*

- |                                    |               |
|------------------------------------|---------------|
| 1. Adōnis (īdis m, f) vernālis (e) | spring adonis |
| 2. Chamomilla, ae f                | chamomile     |
| 3. Crataegus, i f                  | hawthorn      |
| 4. Helianthus, i m                 | sunflower     |
| 5. Salvia, ae f                    | sage          |

#### *Names of pharmaceutical drugs*

- |                   |         |
|-------------------|---------|
| 6. Camphora, ae f | camphor |
| 7. Glucosum, i n  | glucose |

### *Others*

8. aethylīcus, a, um	ethyl
9. aqua, ae f	water
10. destillātus, a, um	distilled
11. glycerinōsus, a, um	glyceric
12. oleōsus, a, um	oily
13. spirituōsus, a, um	alcoholic
14. spirītus, us m	alcohol

### *Common stems*

15. -camph-	camphor derivatives
16. -ephedr-	alkaloid derived from the plant <i>Ephedra sinica</i>
17. -erythr-, -eryth-	from the Greek <i>erythros</i> – red
18. -estr-, -oestr-	estrogens – female sex hormones
19. -glyc-, -gluc-	from the Greek <i>glykys</i> – sweet
20. -phyll-	theophylline derivatives (-phylline)
21. -phyt-	from the Greek <i>phyton</i> – plant
22. -theo-	from the Latin <i>thea</i> – tea

### *Standard prescription phrases*

23. ad 10,0	add up to 10 g
24. ad usum externum (internum)	for external (internal) use
25. ana	of each
26. in ampūllis	in ampules
27. numēro (20)	(20) in number
28. pro infantībus	for children
29. pro injectionībus	for injections
30. quantum satis	a sufficient quantity

## **3.8 EXERCISES**

### **Exercise 1. Translate into Latin pharmaceutical terms as follows:**

mixture for children, infusion of plantain leaves, infusion of chamomile flowers, distilled water, ethyl alcohol, corglycon solution, decoction of buckthorn bark, camphor and sunflower oil solution for external use, nitroglycerin oily solution, estrone oily solution, mucilage of starch, belladonna leaves, infusion of peppermint leaves, castor oil, valerian extract, peppermint water, belladonna dry extract, ampicillin powder for injections, chlorophyllipt alcoholic solution, camphor oily solution for injections.



**Exercise 3. Translate prescriptions into Latin:**

1. Take: Hawthorn fluid extract 25 mL  
Give  
Sign: *20 drops 3 times daily before meals*
2. Take: Camphor 10.0  
Sunflower oil 100.0  
Mix. Give  
Sign: *Rub in to relieve arthritis pain*
3. Take: Glucose solution 5% – 500 mL  
Sterilize!  
Give. Sign: *I.V. by drop infusion*
4. Take: Nikethamide 1 mL  
Give of such doses 10 in number in ampules  
Sign: *1 ml daily subcutaneously*
5. Take: Valerian extract 0.3  
Hawthorn tincture 0.15  
Ethyl alcohol 20 mL  
Distilled water ad 200 mL  
Mix  
Give. Sign: *1 teaspoonful 3 times daily*
6. Take: Aloe 100 mL  
Give  
Sign: *1 tablespoonful by mouth 3 times daily 30 minutes before meals*
7. Take: Piracetam solution 20% – 5 mL  
Give of such doses 10 in number in ampules  
Sign: *5 mL 2 times daily i.m.*
8. Take: Infusion of marshmallow 3.0 – 100 mL  
Marshmallow juice 20 mL  
Mix. Give. Sign: *1 teaspoonful by mouth 5 times daily*
9. Take: Aminophylline solution 24% – 1 mL  
Give of such doses 6 in number in ampules  
Sign: *5 mL 2 times daily i.m.*
10. Take: Menthol 1.0  
Ethyl alcohol 90% – 50 mL  
Mix. Give. Sign: *For external use*

11. Take: Alcoholic solution of  
Nitroglycerin 1% – 20 mL  
Give. Sign: *2 drops under the tongue*
12. Take: Lilly-of-the valley tincture  
Valerian tincture of each 10 mL  
Nitroglycerin solution 1% – 1 mL  
Validol 2 mL  
Mix. Give. Sign: *20 drops by mouth 3 times daily*
13. Take: Mucilage of flax seeds 200 mL  
Give. Sign: *For mouth rinsing*
14. Take: Decoction of marshmallow root 20.0 – 100 mL  
Give. Sign: *For mouth rinsing*
15. Take: Resorcin 0.1  
Ethyl alcohol 95% – 5 mL  
Distilled water 15 mL  
Mix. Give. Sign: *2 drops in the ear 3 times daily*
16. Take: Infusion of plantain leaves 20.0 – 200 mL  
Give. Sign: *1 tablespoonful by mouth 4 times daily*
17. Take: Ergotal solution 0.05% – 1 mL  
Give of such doses 10 in number in ampules  
Sign: *1 mL once daily subcutaneously*

**Exercise 4. Write in Latin the following INN names, find known to you common stems, give their definitions:**

ephedrine, erythromycin, tetracaine, carfecillin, oleandomycin, tetrazepam, theophylline, glycerol, phytomenadione, estradiol, pseudoephedrine, estrone, glucagon, podophyllotoxin, cinchocaine, flucytosine, procainamide, temazepam, chloropyramine, aminophylline, estramustine, clonazepam, articaine

Particular Cases  
of Prescription  
Writing

Lesson  
4

---

• Suppositoria (vaginalia, rectalia) - plural	<i>suppositories (rectal, vaginal)</i>
• Lamellas (membranulas) ophthalmicas - plural	<i>ophthalmic films</i>

### Examples:

#### Tablets

Reciĥe: **Tabulettam** Labetaloli 0.1

Da tales doses numero 30

Da. Signa: *Take 1 tablet 3 times a day*

Reciĥe: **Tabulettas** Dichlothiazidi 0,025 numĕro 50

Da. Signa: *Take 2 tablets 3 times daily for 10 days*

Reciĥe: **Tabulettas** stomachicas cum extracto Belladonnae  
numĕro 10

Da. Signa: *Take 1 tablet 3 times a day*

It will be recalled that some Latin brand names of pharmaceutical drugs are placed in Nominative and in quotes after the dosage form name:

Reciĥe: **Tabulettas** "Nicoverinum" numĕro 20

Da. Signa: *Take 1 tablet 2 times per day*

#### Suppositories

Reciĥe: **Suppositorium** cum Ichthyolo 0,2

Da tales doses numĕro 10

Signa: *Insert 1 suppository in rectum 3 times a day*

Reciĥe: **Suppositoria** cum Nystatino 250 000 ED

Da tales doses numĕro 10

Signa: *Insert 1 suppository into vagina 2 times a day*

Reciĕpe: **Suppositoria** “Bethiolum” numĕro 20

Da. Signa: *Insert 1 suppository in rectum 2 times a day*

### Ophthalmic films

Reciĕpe: **Membranŭlas ophthalmicas** cum Atropini sulfāte numĕro 30

Da. Signa: *Apply under the lower lid daily*

## 4.2 PREPOSITION CUM IN PRESCRIPTIONS

The most common preposition used in prescriptions is the preposition **cum (with)**. You should memorize the noun endings after *cum*:

• Singular	• Second Declension Nouns end in <b>-o</b> (cum Ichthyōlo, cum Oxytetracyclīno)
• Singular	• Third Declension Nouns end in <b>-e</b> (cum Neomycīni sulfāte, cum Atropini sulfāte)

## 4.3 PRESCRIPTION OF SEMISOLID DOSAGE FORMS

### Ointments – Unguenta

- An ointment is a homogeneous, viscous, semisolid preparation with a high viscosity, that is intended for external application to the skin or mucous membranes.
- After *Reciĕpe* the Genitive singular form **Unguenti** is used.
- Examples of prescribing ointments:

Reciĕpe: Unguenti Apilaci 1% – 10,0

Da. Signa: *Apply with the glass rod under the lid of the  
affected eye twice daily*

Reciĕpe: Acidi borīci

Zinci oxŷdi ana 2,0

Resorcini 0,6

Vaselini            ad 30,0

Misce, fiat unguentum

Da. Signa: *Apply to the affected skin area once daily*

### **Liniments – Linimenta**

- Liniments are of a similar viscosity but unlike an ointment or cream a liniment is applied with friction; that is, a liniment is always rubbed in.
- After *Recīpe* the Genitive singular form **Linimenti** is used (e.g.: *Recīpe: Linimenti Synthomycīni...*).

### **Pastes – Pastae**

- *Paste* combines three agents - oil, water, and powder. It is an ointment in which a powder is suspended.
- After *Recīpe* the Genitive singular form **Pastae** is used (e.g.: *Recipe: Pastae Zinci...*).

### **Suppositories – Suppositoria**

- As stated above after *Recīpe* the Accusative plural form **Suppositoria** and seldom the Accusative singular form **Suppositorium** is used.
- There are *rectal suppositories*– *Suppositoria rectalia* and *vaginal suppositories* – *Suppositoria vaginalia*.
- Examples of prescribing suppositories:

Recipe: Suppositorium cum Ichthyolo 0,2

Da tales doses numĕro 10

Signa: *Insert 1 suppository in rectum in the morning and at night*

Recipe: Morphini hydrochlorīdi 0,01

Olei Cacao quantum satis, ut fiat suppositorium rectāle  
numĕro 10

Da. Signa: *Insert 1 suppository in rectum to relieve pain*

## **4.4 PRESCRIPTION OF SOLID DOSAGE FORMS**

### **Tablets – Tabulettae**

- The *tablet* is the most popular dosage form in use today. About two-thirds of all prescriptions are dispensed as solid dosage forms, and half of these are compressed tablets. A tablet can deliver an accurate dosage to a specific site; it is usually taken orally, but can be administered sublingually, buccally, rectally or intravaginally.

- As stated above after *Recīpe* the Accusative plural form **Tabulettas** and seldom the Accusative singular form **Tabulettam** is used.
- There are two prescription writing forms for tablets:
  1. The most common model: after *Recīpe* the name of a pharmaceutical drug with its quantity is indicated followed by the phrase “Da tales doses numĕro ... in tabulettis” (“Give of such doses ... in number in tablets”).
  2. The second model begins with “Tabulettas” (or “Tabulettam”) after *Recīpe* followed by the name of a pharmaceutical drug with its quantity. On the next line “Da tales doses numĕro ...” (“Give of such doses ... in number”) is indicated.

### Compare:

Recipe: Paracetamōli 0,3

**Da tales doses numĕro 6 in tabulettis**

Signa: *Take 1 tablet by oral route*

Recipe: **Tabulettas** Paracetamōli 0,3

**Da tales doses numĕro 6**

Signa: *Take 1 tablet by mouth as needed for headache*

### Pill (dragée) – Dragées

- The *pill* is a small, round, solid pharmacological oral dosage form that was in use before the advent of tablets and capsules. Pills are made by mixing the active ingredients with an excipient such as glucose syrup and often coated with sugar. In colloquial usage, tablets and capsules are still often referred to as "pills" collectively.
- The Latin “Dragées” is not declined (that is the ending never changes). After the dosage form the name of pharmaceutical drug is indicated followed by “Da tales doses numĕro...” (“Give of such doses ... in number”).

Recipe: **Dragées** Diazolīni 0,05

**Da tales doses numĕro 20**

Signa: *Take 1 pill two times a day*

### Herbal plant mixtures – Species

- In the English speaking world this pharmaceutical dosage form is not common, instead of this the term “tea” is often used, because from herbal plant mixtures aromatic beverages by combination with hot or boiling water are prepared.
- It will be recalled that the Latin word “species” is used only in plural: *species, ĕrum f*, the Genitive plural form after *Recīpe* is *Speciĕrum...* . Consequently, Group One adjectives agree with the noun in Genitive plural and end in **-ārum**, e.g.: *antiasthmatĕarum*.
- Types of herbal plant mixtures:
  - Species antiasthmatĕicae                      antiasthmatic tea
  - Species cholagōgae                              bile-expelling tea

- Species pectorāles                      breast tea
- Species sedatīvae                        sedative tea

- Examples for prescribing species:

Short form:

Recipe: Speciērum antiasthmaticārum 100,0

Da. Signa: *Burn ½ teaspoonful and inhale*

Full form:

Recipe: Herbae Adonīdis vernālis                      2,0

Rhizomātis cum radicibus Valeriānae                      1,5

Misce, fiant species

Da tales doses numēro 10

Signa: *Take 1 tablespoonful 3 times a day*

### **Powders – Pulvēres**

- A powder is a dry solid composed of a large number of very fine particles that may flow freely when shaken.
- After *Recīpe* the Genitive singular form **Pulvēris** is used (e.g.: *Recīpe: Pulvēris radīcis Rhei ...*).
- Powders for external use are distributed as very fine powders (*pulvis subtilissīmus*). Пример: *Misce, fiat pulvis subtilissīmus*.
- Loose powders are packed in *wax paper* (*Charta cerata*) and *paraffine paper* (*Charta paraffināta*), it is indicated in prescriptions, e.g: *Da tales doses numēro... in charta cerāta (in charta paraffināta)*.

### **Granules – Granŭla**

- In pharmaceutical terms, a granule is small particles gathered into a larger, permanent aggregate in which the original particles can still be identified.
- After *Recīpe* the Genitive plural form **Granulōrum** is used (e.g.: *Recīpe: Granulōrum Natrīi aminosalicylātis ...*).

### **Capsules – Capsŭlae**

- A capsule is a pill in the form of a small rounded gelatinous container with medicine inside.
- In prescriptions the standard phrase "*Da tales doses numēro ... in capsŭlis*" (*Give of such doses ... in number in capsules*) is indicated.
- The two main types of capsules are: soft-shelled gelatinous capsules and hard-shelled amylaceous capsules. Concequently, in prescribing capsules "*in capsŭlis gelatinōsis*" (*in gelatinous capsules*) or "*in capsŭlis amylāceis*" (*in amylaceous capsules*) should be indicated.

## 4.5 COMMON STEMS (PART 4)

Memorize the common stems as follows:

#	Stem	Definition, English spelling	Examples
1.	<b>-aesthes-, -aesth-, -asthes-, -esthes-</b>	anesthetics (drugs that cause <i>anesthesia</i> —reversible loss of sensation)	<b>Anaesthesinum</b> <b>Pavesthesinum</b>
2.	<b>-haem-</b>	from the Greek <i>haema</i> – blood	<b>Haemodesum</b> <b>Haemostimulinum</b>
3.	<b>-hydr-</b>	refers to <i>hydrogen, water or hydroxyl group</i>	<b>Hydrocortisonum</b> <b>Hydrochlorthiazidum</b>
4.	<b>-oxy-</b>	oxygen derivatives	<b>Oxylidinum</b> <b>Oxyfedrinum</b>
5.	<b>-test-</b>	testosterone derivatives (male sex hormone)	<b>Testosteronum</b> <b>Medrotestronum</b>
6.	<b>-thym-</b>	drugs from thymus gland	<b>Thymactidum</b> <b>Thymostimulinum</b>
7.	<b>-thyr-</b>	drugs for treatment of the thyroid gland	<b>Triiodthyroninum</b> <b>Thyreocomb</b>

## 4.6 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. What pharmaceutical dosage forms are prescribed in Accusative?
2. What is the form of “*tabuleta*” after “*Recīpe*” in Accusative singular and Accusative plural?
3. What is the form of “*suppositorium*” after “*Recīpe*” in Accusative singular and Accusative plural?
4. In what form is prescribed the pharmaceutical dosage form “*membranŭla ophthalmīca*” after “*Recīpe*”?
5. What endings do the names of pharmaceutical drugs after the preposition *cum* have?
6. What are the Genitive singular forms of *unguentum*, *linimentum*, *pasta*, *pulvis*?
7. In what form is prescribed the pharmaceutical dosage form “*granulum*”?
8. Name all known names of herbal plant mixtures.
9. Translate into Russian: *in tabulettis*, *in charta cerāta*.
10. What do the common stems *-haem-*, *-oxy-*, *-test-*, *-thym-* mean?

## 4.7 HOMEWORK

1. Learn the theoretical material of Lesson Four.
2. Learn the Vocabulary of this Lesson .
3. Practice Exercises No. 1, 3 and 4 – in written form; 2 – orally.

## 4.8 VOCABULARY

### *Names of medicinal plants*

- |                    |                     |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Capsicum, i n   | capsicum            |
| 2. Digitalis, is f | foxglove, digitalis |
| 3. Urtica, ae f    | nettle              |

### *Names of pharmaceutical drugs*

- |                          |                  |
|--------------------------|------------------|
| 4. Anaesthesinum, i n    | an(a)esthesine   |
| 5. Anaesthesolum, i n    | anaesthesol      |
| 6. Anusolum, i n         | anusol           |
| 7. Cacao (no declension) | cacao            |
| 8. Carbo, ōnis m         | carbon, charcoal |
| 9. Coffeinum, i n        | caffeine         |
| 10. Estriolum, i n       | estriol          |
| 11. Megestrolum, i n     | megestrol        |
| 12. Oestronum, i n       | estrone          |
| 13. Platyphyllinum, i n  | platyphylline    |

### *Others*

- |                          |                   |
|--------------------------|-------------------|
| 14. activātus, a, um     | activated         |
| 15. pectorālis, e        | pectoral          |
| 16. sedatīvus, a, um     | sedative          |
| 17. solubīlis, e         | soluble           |
| 18. stomachīcus, a, um   | stomachic         |
| 19. subtilissīmus, a, um | finest, very fine |

### *Standard prescription phrases*

- |                      |                |
|----------------------|----------------|
| 20. in charta cerāta | in waxed paper |
| 21. in tabulettis    | in tablets     |

### *Common stems*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 22. -aesthes-, -aesth-, -asthes-,<br>-esthes- | anesthetics (drugs that<br>cause <i>anesthesia</i> —reversible<br>loss of sensation) |
|---|--|

23. -haem-	from the Greek <i>haema</i> – blood
25. -hydr-	refers to <i>hydrogen, water or hydroxyl group</i>
24. -oxy-	oxygen derivatives
25. -test-	testosterone derivatives (male sex hormone)
26. -thym-	drugs from thymus gland
27. -thyr-	drugs for treatment of the thyroid gland

## 4.9 EXERCISES

### Exercise 1. Translate into Latin pharmaceutical terms as follows:

“Vicalin” tablets; alcoholic menthol solution for external use; ephedrine in tablets; «Anaesthesol» suppositories; «Baralgin» tablet; euphylline solution in ampules; estrone in ampules; activated carbon; finest powder; vaginal suppositories; camphor oily solution for injections; breast tea; stomachic tablets with belladonna extract; «Allochol» tablets for children; liniment of soluble streptocid; ophthalmic films with florenal; tablets of soluble carbon; tablets of valerian extract; sedative tea; distilled water; «Becarbon» tablets; «Anusol» suppositories; suppositories with glycerin; anaesthesin oily solution.

### Exercise 2. Translate prescriptions into English:

1. Recipe: Tabulettas “Pentalginum” numĕro 10  
Da. Signa: *Take 1 tablet 3 times a day*
2. Recipe: Suppositorium “Doxiproct“ numĕro 6  
Da. Signa: *Insert 1 suppository in rectum 3 times daily*
3. Recipe: Suppositoria cum Digitoxino 0,00015  
numĕro 10  
Detur. Signĕtur: *Insert 1 suppository in rectum 2 times daily*
4. Recipe: Pulvĕris foliōrum Digitalis 0,1  
Olei Cacao 2,5  
Misce, fiat suppositorium rectale  
Da tales doses numĕro 12  
Signa: *Insert 1 suppository in rectum 3 times daily*

5. Recipe: Speciērum amarārum 10,0 – 200,0 ml  
Detur. Signētur: *1 tablespoonful a day (20 minutes before meals)*
6. Recipe: Solutiōnis Oestroni oleosae 0,05% – 1 ml  
Da tales doses numēro 6 in ampūllis  
Signa: *1 mL once a day i.m.*
7. Recipe: Mentholi 0,15  
Protargoli 0,5  
Vaselini ad 15,0  
Misce, fiat unguentum  
Da. Signa: *Apply to the nasal mucosa 3 times a day*
8. Recipe: Tabulettas Thyreoidini 0,1 numēro 50  
Da. Signa: *Take 1 tablet 3 times a day*
9. Recipe: Granulōrum Laminaridi 50,0  
Detur. Signētur: *2 teaspoonful 3 times per day (after meals with water)*
10. Recipe: Extracti Urtīcae fluīdi 30 ml  
Detur. Signētur: *30 drops 3 times daily 30 minutes before meals*
11. Recipe: Tabulettas “Tetravitum” numēro 50  
Da. Signa: *Take 1 tablet per day after meals*
12. Recipe: Solutionis Procaini 2% – 2 ml  
Da tales doses numēro 10 in ampūllis  
Signa: *0.2 mL i.m.*
13. Recipe: Unguenti Vulnusani 45,0  
Detur. Signētur: *Apply to the septic wound daily*
14. Recipe: Cyclodoli 0,002  
Da tales doses numēro 50 in tabulettis  
Signa: *Take 1 tablet 3 times a day*

**Exercise 3. Translate prescriptions into Latin:**

1. Take: Buckthorn bark  
Nettle leaves of each 15.0  
Peppermint leaves  
Valerian root of each 5.0  
Mix to make herbal plant mixture  
Give. Sign: *Prepare a decoction at 1 tablespoonfull for a glass of boiling-hot water, take 1/2 glass in the morning and prior to bedtime*
2. Take: «Capsicam» ointment 45.0  
Give  
Sign: *Apply a thin layer to affected area 2 times per day*
3. Take: Monomycin 0.25  
Give of such doses 50 in number in tablets  
Sign: *Take 1 tablet 2 times daily*
4. Take: «Camphocin» liniment 80 mL  
Give. Sign: *Rub the affected skin areas 3 times a day*
5. Take: Capsicum plaster 12 x 18 cm 4 in number  
Give. Sign: *Apply to the skin, press lightly and hold to 2 days*
6. Take: «Anusol» suppositories 6 in number  
Give. Sign: *Insert 1 suppository in rectum prior to bedtime*
7. Take: Ophthalmic films with Florenal 30 in number  
Give. Sign: *Apply under the lower lid 2 times a day*
8. Take: Trichomonacid 0.5  
Cacao oil in sufficient quantity  
to make vaginal suppositories 10 in number  
Mix. Give. Sign: *Insert 1 suppository in vagina at night*
9. Take: Suppositories with Euphylline 0.3  
Give of such doses 12 in number  
Sign: *Insert 1 suppository in rectum 2 times a day*
10. Take: Tablet of Digoxin 0.00025  
Give of such doses 30 in number  
Sign: *Take 1 tablet 2 times daily*

11. Take: Tablets of Digitoxin 0.0001 10 in number  
Give. Sign: *Take 1 tablet 3 times daily*
12. Take: Suppositories with Glycerin 10 in number  
Выдать. Sign: *Insert 1 suppository in rectum once per day after breakfast*
13. Take: Paracetamol 0.3  
Caffeine 0.03  
Codeine 0.08  
Give of such doses 6 in number in tablets  
Sign: *Take 1 tablet by oral route 2 times daily*
14. Take: Finest Streptocid 20.0  
Codeine 0.08  
Give of such doses 6 in number in tablets  
Sign: *Take 1 tablet for headache*
15. Take: Sedative tea 10.0 – 200 мл  
Give. Sign: *Take 1/3 of the glass 2 times per day after meals*
16. Take: Granules of Plantaglucid 50.0  
Give. Sign: *Take 1 teaspoonful 3 times a day (20 minutes before meals, dissolve in 1/4 glass of water)*
17. Take: Rectal suppository with Theophylline 0.2  
Give of such doses 6 in number  
Sign: *Insert 1 suppository 2 times per day в сутки*
18. Take: Anaesthesin oily solution 5% – 10 mL  
Give. Sign: *3 droops in the ear 3 times daily*

**Exercise 4. Write in Latin the following INN names, find known to you common stems, give their definitions:**

testosterone, thymol, paromomycin, hydrochloride, disopyramide, flunitrazepam, prilocaine, liothyranine, bupivacaine, medazepam, mepivacaine, cytochrome c, polyvinyl, rifamycin, flucloxacillin, thymostimulin, formoterol, polygeline, podophyllotoxin, thyreoidin, oxetacaine, megestrol, glycine, estriol, doxycycline, rufocromomycin, nitroglycerin, levonorgestrel, camphor, ephedrine, ampicillin.

Latin  
Chemical  
Terminology

Lesson  
5

<b>Ag</b>	Argentum, i n	silver
<b>As</b>	Arsenicum, i n	arsenic
<b>Ba</b>	Barium, i n	barium
<b>Bi</b>	Bismuthum, i n	bismuth
<b>Ca</b>	Calcium, i n	calcium
<b>C</b>	Carboneum, i n	carbon
<b>Cu</b>	Cuprum, i n	copper
<b>Fe</b>	Ferrum, i n	iron
<b>F</b>	Fluorum, i n <i>or</i> Phthorum, i n	fluorine
<b>Hg</b>	Hydrargyrum, i n	mercury
<b>H</b>	Hydrogenium, i n	hydrogen
<b>I</b>	Iodum, i n	iodine
<b>K</b>	Kalium, i n	potassium
<b>Li</b>	Lithium, i n	lithium
<b>Mg</b>	Magnesium, i n <i>or</i> Magnium, i n	magnesium
<b>Na</b>	Natrium, i n	sodium
<b>N</b>	Nitrogenium, i n	nitrogen
<b>O</b>	Oxygenium, i n	oxygen
<b>Pb</b>	Plumbum, i n	lead
<b>S</b>	Sulfur, ūris n	sulfur
<b>Zn</b>	Zincum, i n	zinc

## 5. 2 LATIN NAMES OF ACIDS

The Latin names of acids consist of the noun **Acidum, i n** (acid), which is always capitalized, and a One Group adjective, which agree with the noun. The names of acids are formed according to tree models as follows:

Latin names of acids		English names of acids	
Acid suffix	Example	Acid suffix	Example
<b>-icum</b>	Acidum salicylicum	<b>-ic acid</b>	salicylic acid
<b>-osum</b>	Acidum chlorosus	<b>-ous acid</b>	chlorous acid

<b>hydro- -icum</b>	Acidum hydrochloricum	<b>hydro- -ic acid</b>	hydrochloric acid
-------------------------	-----------------------	----------------------------	-------------------

1. Latin adjectives with the acid suffix **-ĭc-** ending in **-um** coincide with English adjectives with the acid suffix **-ic**:

*e.g.:*

- arsenic acid – Acĭdum arsenicĭcum (Arsenĭcum, i n → arsenic + ĭc + um);
- sulfuric acid – Acĭdum sulfurĭcum (Sulfur, ŭris n → sulfur + ĭc + um);
- nitric acid - Acĭdum nitricum (Nitrogenium, i n → nitr + ĭc + um);

2. Latin adjectives with the acid suffix **-ōs-** ending in **-um** coincide with English adjectives with the acid suffix **-ous**:

*e.g.:*

- arsenous acid - Acĭdum arsenicōsum (Arsenĭcum, i n → arsenic + ōs + um);
- sulfurous acid - Acĭdum sulfurōsum (Sulfur, ŭris n → sulfur + ōs + um);
- nitrous acid – Acĭdum nitrōsum (Nitrogenĭum, i n → nitr + ōs + um);

3. Latin names of acids with the prefix **hydro-** ending in **-ĭcum** coincide with English names of acids with the prefix **hydro-** and the acid suffix **-ĭc**:

*e.g.:*

- Acĭdum hydrochlorĭcum – hydrochloric acid
- Acĭdum hydrosulfurĭcum – hydrosulfuric acid.

### 5.3 LATIN NAMES OF OXIDES, PEROXIDES AND HYDROXIDES

Latin names of oxides, peroxides and hydroxides consist of two parts:

- *a name of a chemical element in Genitive,*
- *a word oxĭdum, i n (oxide), peroxyĭdum, i n (peroxide) or hydroxyĭdum, i n (hydroxide) in Nominative:*

*e.g.:*

- *Zinci oxĭdum* - zinc oxide
- *Hydrogenĭi peroxyĭdum* - hydrogen peroxide
- *Aluminĭi hydroxyĭdum* - aluminium hydroxide

The words *oxĭdum*, *peroxyĭdum*, *hydroxyĭdum* in the names of oxides are never capitalized:

Solutĭo Hydrogenĭi peroxyĭdi dilŭta – *diluted solution of hydrogen peroxide.*

## 5.4 COMMON STEMS (PART 5)

Memorize the common stems as follows:

#	Stem	Definition, English spelling	Examples
1.	<b>-benz-</b>	benzole derivatives	<b>Benzobarbitalum</b> <b>Benzotephum</b>
2.	<b>-thi-</b>	sulfur	<b>Thioridazinum</b> <b>Thiaminum</b>
3.	<b>-yl-</b>	-yl- is used to form names of radicals, either separate or chemically bonded parts of molecules	<b>Benzylpenicillinum</b> <b>Sulfacylum-natrium</b>
4.	<b>-zid-, -zin-, -zol-, -az(a)-, -(a)zon-</b>	azo compounds	<b>Azathioprinum</b> <b>Norsulfazolum</b> <b>Sibazonum</b>

## 5.5 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. What declension are the Latin names of chemical elements? Name the exceptions.
2. What is the structure of the Latin names of acids?
3. What Latin acid suffix does the English acid suffix *-ic* coincide with?
4. What Latin acid suffix does the English acid suffix *-ous* coincide with?
5. How are formed the names of oxides, peroxides and? Give examples.

## 5.6 HOMEWORK

1. Learn the theoretical material of Lesson Five.
2. Learn the Vocabulary of this Lesson .
3. Practice Exercises No. 1, 3 and 4 – in written form; 2 – orally.

## 5.7 VOCABULARY

*Names of chemical elements*

- |                   |           |
|-------------------|-----------|
| 1. Aluminium, i n | aluminium |
| 2. Calcium, i n   | calcium   |

3. Ferrum, i n	iron
4. Hydrargyrum, i n	mercury
5. Hydrogenium, i n	hydrogen
6. Iodum, i n	iodine
7. Magnesium, i n; Magnium, i n	magnesium
8. Plumbum, i n	lead
9. Sulfur, ůris n	sulfur
10. Zincum, i n	zinc

#### *Names of acids*

11. Acĭdum acetylsalicylicum	acetylsalicylic acid
12. Acĭdum ascorbinĭcum	ascorbic acid
13. Acĭdum benzoĭcum	benzoic acid
14. Acĭdum borĭcum	boric acid
15. Acĭdum folĭcum	folic acid
16. Acĭdum hydrochlorĭcum	hydrochloric acid
17. Acĭdum lipoĭcum	lipoic acid
18. Acĭdum nicotinĭcum	nicotinic acid
19. Acĭdum salicylicum	salicylic acid

#### *Names of oxides*

20. hydroxydum, i n	hydroxide
21. oxydum, i n	oxide
22. peroxydum, i n	peroxide

#### *Names of pharmaceutical drugs*

23. Iodoformium, i n	iodoform
24. Sacchĕrum, i n	sugar

#### *Others*

25. albus, a, um	white
26. flavus, a, um	yellow

#### *Common stems*

27. -benz-	benzole derivatives
28. -thi-	sulfur
29. -yl-	names of radicals
30. -zid-, -zin-, -zol-, -az(a)-, -(a)zon-	azo compounds

## 5.7 EXERCISES

### Exercise 1. *Translate into Latin pharmaceutical terms as follows:*

tablets of nicotinic acid; ergocalciferol alcoholic solution; tablets of lipoic acid; boric acid solution; zinc ointment; lead plaster; tablets of acetylsalicylic acid for children; alcoholic solution of camphor and acetylsalicylic acid; magnesium oxide; lead water; «Ferroplex» pills; «Microiodum» tablets; acetylsalicylic acid in tablets; hydrogen peroxide; nikotinamid in ampules; ergocalciferol oily solution; solution of hydrogen peroxide; zinc oxide; zinc paste; iodine alcoholic solution; hydrochloric acid; «Calmagin» granules for children; aluminium hydroxide.

### Exercise 2. *Translate prescriptions into English:*

1. Recīpe: Benzionali 0,1  
Da tales doses numĕro 30 in tabulettis  
Signa: *Take 1 tablet 3 times a day after meals*
2. Recīpe: Aquae Plumbi 200 ml  
Da. Signa: *For bath in haemorrhoids*
3. Recīpe: Unguenti Estrioli 0,1% – 20,0  
Da. Signa: *Insert 0.5g into vagina once daily (2 times a week)*
4. Recīpe: Infusi florum Chamomillae 20,0 : 400 ml  
Acīdi borīci 8,0  
Glycerini 20,0  
Misceātur. Detur  
Signĕtur: *For mouth rinsing 5 times a day*
5. Recīpe: Acīdi hydrochlorīci 20,0  
Da. Signa: *20 drops for ½ glass of water*
6. Recīpe: Iodoformii 2,5  
Vaselini ad 25,0  
Misce, fiat unguentum  
Da. Signa: *Apply to the affected skin areas*
7. Recīpe: Acīdi ascorbinīci 0,1  
Dentur tales doses numĕro 20 in tabulettis  
Signĕtur: *Take 2 tablets 2 times a day*
8. Recīpe: Unguenti Hydrargyri oxŷdi flavi 1% – 10,0  
Da. Signa: *Apply to lid edges 3 times a day*

9. Recīpe: Unguenti Acīdi borīci 5% – 25,0  
 Detur. Signētur: *Apply under the lid prior bedtime*
10. Recīpe: Zinci oxīdi 0,05  
 Sacchāri 0,25  
 Misce, fiat pulvis  
 Da tales doses numēro 50  
 Signa: *Take 1 powder 3 times a day for 3 weeks*
11. Recīpe: Unguenti Acīdi salicylīci 10 % – 50,0  
 Da. Signa: *Apply to the affected skin*
12. Recīpe: Acīdi borīci 0,3  
 Spiritus aethylīci 70% – 10 ml  
 Misceātur. Detur. Signētur: *10 drops into the ear*
13. Recīpe: Resorcini 1,0  
 Pastae Zinci ad 10,0  
 Misce, fiat pasta  
 Da. Signa: *Apply to the wart area under the dressing for 1 day*
14. Recīpe: Unguenti Hydrargyri albi 40,0  
 Detur. Signētur: *Apply to the affected skin area*

**Exercise 3. Translate prescriptions into Latin:**

1. Take: Benzoic acid 0.6  
 Salicylic acid 0.3  
 Vaseline to 10.0  
 Mix to make ointment  
 Give. Sign: *Apply to the affected skin areas*
2. Take: Salicylic acid 5.0  
 Zinc oxide 25.0  
 Talc 50.0  
 Mix to make powder  
 Give  
 Sign: *Dust intertrigo areas*
3. Take: «Capsin» liniment 50 mL  
 Give. Sign: *Rub the affected skin areas 3 times a day*
4. Take: Salicylic acid 1.0  
 Starch

Vaseline in equal parts to 50.0  
Mix to make paste  
Give. Sign: *Apply to the affected skin areas*

5. Take: Folic acid 0.008  
Ascorbic acid 0.1  
Give of such doses 30 in number in tablets  
Sign: *Take 1 tablet 3 times a day*
6. Take: Solution of hydrogen peroxide 50 mL  
Give  
Sign: *1 tablespoonful for one glass of water. For mouth rinsing*
7. Take: Oily solution of camphor  
for external use 10 % – 10 mL  
Give. Sign: *For rubbing*
8. Take: Stomachic tablets with belladonna extract  
20 in number  
Give. Sign: *Take 1 tablet 3 times a day after meals*
9. Take: Alcoholic solution of hydrogen peroxide  
1,5% – 50 mL  
Give. Sign: *1 tablespoonful for one glass of water. For mouth rinsing*
10. Take: Magnesium oxide 0.5  
Give of such doses 30 in number  
Sign: *Take 1 powder one hour after meals*
11. Take: Menthol 1.0  
Boric acid 4.0  
Glycerin to 100.0  
Mix to make ointment  
Give. Sign: *For external use*
12. Take: Suppositories with paracetamol 0.25  
Give of such doses 6 in number  
Sign: *Insert 1 suppository in rectum to 4 times daily*
13. Take: Zinc oxide 3.0  
Starch to 10.0  
Mix to make powder  
Give. Sign: *Apply to the affected skin areas*

14. Take: «Zincundan» ointment 30.0  
Give  
Sign: *Apply to the affected skin areas 2 times a day*
15. Take: Benzoic acid 0.2  
Give of such doses 20 in number  
Sign: *Take 1 powder 4 times daily*
16. Take: Zinc oxide  
Talc each of 20.0  
Glycerin 30.0  
Lead water 30 mL  
Mix. Give  
Sign: *Shake before use and apply with a cotton pellet to the affected skin areas 2 times a day*

**Exercise 4. Write in Latin the following INN names, find known to you common stems, give their definitions:**

benzbromarone, acetazolamide, dimenhydrinate, antazoline, sulfathiazole, oxybuprocaine, acetylcysteine, thiamine, ambazone, doxylamine, mebhydrolin, indanazolin, tetracycline, midecamycin, dichloroxilenol, salicylamide, danazol, hydroxyprogesterone, benzylpenicillin, hydrochlorthiazide, diosmin, oxacillin, benzocaine, neomycin, dihydrocodeine, doxycycline, promazine, pantoprazole, triazolam, pentoxyverine.

Latin  
Names of  
Salts

Lesson  
6

---

- *Epinephrini hydrochloridum* - epinephrine hydrochloride
- *Natrĭi nitris* - sodium nitrite

The names of cations in the Latin language are always capitalized, and the names of anions are never capitalized (e.g., *Solutĭo Natrĭi tetraborĕtis glycerinĕsa*). Common salt-forming cations include the names of chemical elements (calcium, irin, magnesium, potassium, sodium) and some pharmaceutical substances.

### The Latin and English names of anions

The Latin names of anions are formed with suffixes **-as**, **-is**, **-ĭd(um)**. The Latin suffixes of anions in Nominative and Genitive and their English equivalents are listed in the table:

<i>Latin names of anions</i>		<i>English names of anions</i>	
<i>Nom./Gen. endings</i>	<i>Examples</i>	<i>endings</i>	<i>Examples</i>
<b>-as</b> <b>-Ātis</b>	Aluminii nitras Aluminii nitrĀtis	<b>-ate</b>	aluminium nitrate
<b>-is</b> <b>-ĭtis</b>	Aluminii nitris Aluminii nitrĭtis	<b>-ite</b>	aluminium nitrite
<b>-ĭdum</b> <b>-ĭdi</b>	Natrii chlorĭdum Natrii chlorĭdi	<b>-ide</b>	sodium chloride

#### Explanations:

- The names of anions with suffixes **-as**, **-is** are in the Latin language the third-declension nouns. The Genitive form of anions with suffixes **-as**, **-is** is formed similarly to other third-declension nouns with the same endings:

e.g.:

- *citras, ātis m* - citrate (as *tuberosĭtas, ātis f*)
- *phosphas, ātis m* - phosphate
- *nitris, itis m* - nitrite

- The names of anions with the suffixe **-ĭd-** are neuter second-declension nouns:

e.g.:

- *chlorĭdum, i n* - chloride
- *bromĭdum, i n* - bromide.

Common salt-forming anions include:

- acetate – acetas (acetatis)
- carbonate – carbonas (carbonatis)
- chloride – chloridum (chloridi)
- citrate – citras (citratis)

- hydroxide – hydroxydum (hydroxydi)
- nitrate – nitras (nitratis)
- nitrite – nitris (nitritis)
- oxide – oxydum (oxydi)
- phosphate – phosphas (phosphatis)
- sulfate – sulfas (sulfatis)

**Basic salts:** basic salts are salts which are the product of the neutralization of a strong base and a weak acid. The English names of basic salts include the word «**basic**», which coincides with the Latin prefix «**sub-**».

*e.g.:*

- **basic** bismuth nitrate – *Bismūthi subnitras (Bismūthi subnitrātis)*

## 6.2 TWO-COMPONENT NAMES OF SALTS WITH –NATRIUM

The Latin two-component names of salts with *–natrium* as a second component are written with a hyphen, *–natrium* is not capitalized, these names have the fixed word order, and the both parts are in the same grammatical case:

*e.g.: sulfacyl-sodium*

- Nominative: *Sulfacylum-natrium*
- Genitive: *Sulfacyli-natrii*

## 6.3 COMMON STEMS (PART 6)

Memorize the common stems as follows:

#	Stem	Definition, English spelling	Examples
1.	<b>-aeth-</b>	ethyl group	<b>Aethpenalum</b> <b>Aethymizolum</b>
2.	<b>-meth-</b>	methyl group	<b>Methyldopa</b> <b>Methoxalenum</b>
3.	<b>-morph-</b>	morphine derivates	<b>Morphilongum</b> <b>Morpholepum</b>
4.	<b>-phen-</b>	phenyl group	<b>Pheniraminum</b> <b>Phentolaminum</b>

## 6.4 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. What is the structure of English names of salts?
2. What is the structure of Latin names of salts?
3. What words in the Latin names of salts are capitalized and not capitalized?
4. Name English suffixes which form the names of anions. Name their Latin equivalents.
5. What are the common salt-forming anions?
6. How are the Latin names of basic salts formed?
7. How are the Latin two-component names of salts with *-natrium* as a second component written?

## 6.5 HOMEWORK

1. Learn the theoretical material of Lesson Six.
2. Learn the Vocabulary of this Lesson .
3. Practice Exercises No. 1, 2, 4, 5 – in written form; 3 – orally.

## 6.5 VOCABULARY

### *Names of chemical elements*

1. Argentum, i n	silver
2. Bismūthum, i n	bismuth
3. Cuprum, i n	copper
4. Kalium, i n	potassium
5. Natrium, i n	sodium

### *Names of anions*

6. acetas, ātis m	acetate
7. benzoas, ātis m	benzoate
8. bromīdum, i n	bromide
9. chlorīdum, i n	chloride
10. gluconas, ātis m	gluconate
11. hydras, ātis m	hydrate
12. hydrocarbonas, ātis m	hydrocarbonate
13. hydrochlorīdum, i n	hydrochloride
14. iodīdum, i n	iodide
15. lactas, ātis m	lactate
16. nitras, ātis m	nitrate
17. orotas, ātis m	orotate

18.phosphas, ātis m	phosphate
19.salicylas, ātis m	salicylate
20.subcarbonas, ātis m	basic carbonate
21.subnitras, ātis m	basic nitrate
22.sulfas, ātis m	sulfatate
23.tetraboras, ātis m	tetraborate

*Names of pharmaceutical drugs*

24.Methylī salicylas (ātis m)	methyl salicylate
25.Phenylī salicylas (ātis m)	phenyl salicylate

*Others*

26.isotonīcus, a, um	isotonic
----------------------	----------

*Common stems*

27. -aeth-	ethyl group
28. -meth-	methyl group
29. -morph-	morphine derivates
30. -phen-	phenyl group

## 6.6 EXERCISES

### **Exercise 1. Translate into Latin names of salts as follows:**

streptomycin sulfate, thiamine bromide, retinol acetate, calcium chloride, protamine sulfate, apomorphine hydrochloride, hinidin sulfate, zinc sulfate, pilocarpine hydrochloride, ambenonium chloride, atropine sulfate, epinephrine hydrochloride, magnesium sulfate, desoxycorticosterone acetate, ethylmorphine hydrochloride, doxycycline hydrochloride.

### **Exercise 2. Translate into Latin pharmaceutical terms as follows:**

Tablets of potassium orotate for children, tetracycline ointment, codeine phosphate in tablets, bismuth subntrate with belladonna extract, sodium chloride isotonic solution, atropine sulfate solution, benzylpenicillin-sodium, ethacridine lactate, yellow mercury oxide, silver nitrate, copper sulfate, hydrogen peroxide solution, thiopental-sodium, powder of codeine phosphate, magnesium sulfate solution, tablets of ethamine-sodium, morphine hydrochloride solution, Phenobarbital-sodium, tablets of sodium hydrocarbonate, oily solution of retinol acetate for injections, powder of aluminium hydroxide, sulfapyridazine-sodium solution, apomorphine in amules.

### **Exercise 3. Translate prescriptions into English:**

1. Recipe: Unguenti Lincomycini 1% – 15,0  
Da. Signa: *Apply a dressing on the skin in the area of inflammatory infiltrate*
  
2. Recipe: Acīdi salicylīci  
Bismuthi subnitrātis ana 1,0  
Hydrargyri albi 2,0  
Mentholi 0,1  
Zinci oxīdi 5,0  
Vaselini ad 15,0  
Misce, fiat pasta  
Da. Signa: *Apply to anal fissures*
  
3. Recipe: Infusi radīcis Valerianae 6,0 : 200 ml  
Natrii bromīdi 6,0  
Codeini phosphātis 0,2  
Misce. Da  
Signa: *1 tablespoonful 3 times a day*
  
4. Recipe: Tincturae Valerianae  
Tincturae Convallariae ana 10 ml  
Aethylmorphini hydrochlorīdi 0,2  
Natrii bromīdi 3,0  
Misceātur. Detur  
Signētur: *Take 25 drops 3 times daily*
  
5. Recipe: Mentholi 0,2  
Bismuthi subnitrātis 0,6  
Antipyrini 0,5  
Solutiōnis Adrenalini hydrochlorīdi 0,1% –  
guttas XV  
Vaselini  
Lanolini ana 10,0  
Misce, fiat unguentum  
Da. Signa: *Apply to the nasal mucosa 3 times daily in case of exacerbation of chronic rhinitis after operations in the nasal cavity*
  
6. Recipe: Vinylini 5,0  
Argentī nitrātis 0,5  
Vaselini ad 50,0  
Misce, fiat unguentum  
Da. Signa: *Apply with a stick on ulcerative surface under the dressing*
  
7. Recipe: Iodi 0,5

Kalii iodīdi 5,0  
Vaselini ad 50,0  
Misce, fiat unguentum  
Detur. Signetur: *Apply to the affected skin area daily*

8. Recipe: Camphōrae 0,1  
Sacchāri lactātis 0,3  
Misce, fiat pulvis  
Da tales doses numero 10 in charta cerāta  
Signa: *Take 1 power 3 times a day*
9. Recipe: Natrii tetraborātis 25,0  
Lanolini 100,0  
Misce, fiat unguentum  
Da. Signa: *Insert with a cotton pellet into vagina*
10. Recipe: Prednisoloni 0,05  
Ephedrini hydrochlorīdi 0,1  
Procaini hydrochlorīdi 0,5% – 10 ml  
Misceatur. Detur  
Signetur: *5 drops into the nose 2 times per day*
11. Recipe: Streptomycini sulfātis 0,5  
Solutiōnis Natrii chlorīdi isotonīcae ad 100 ml  
Misceatur. Detur  
Signetur: *For nasal rinsing in case of atrophic nasal mucosa*
12. Recipe: Natrii hydrocarbonātis  
Natrii tetraborātis  
Natrii chlorīdi ana 15,0  
Misce, fiat pulvis  
Da. Signa: *1 tablespoonful for 1 glass of water for mouth rinsing*
13. Recipe: Unguenti Neomycini sulfātis 0,5% – 10,0  
Da. Signa: *Apply with a glass stick under the lower lid 3 times daily*
14. Recipe: Solutiōnis Tetracaini hydrochlorīdi 0,1% – 10 ml  
Zinci sulfātis 0,025  
Acīdi borīci 0,2  
Solutionis Epinephrini hydrochlorīdi 0,1% – guttas X  
Misceatur. Detur  
Signetur: *2 drops into the eye 3 times a day*

**Exercise 4. Translate prescriptions into Latin:**

1. Take: Phenoxymethylpenicillin 100,000 ED  
Give of such doses 10 in number in tablets  
Sign: *Take 1 tablet 4 times daily*
2. Take: Menthol 0.1  
Phenyl salicylate 0.3  
Vaseline to 10.0  
Mix. Give. Sign: *Apply to nasal mucosa 3 times a day*
3. Take: Tablets of methylandrosteradiol 0.025  
30 in number  
Give. Sign: *1 tablet under the tongue 2 times daily*
4. Take: Barbamyl 0.3  
Distilled water to 25 mL  
Mix. Give  
Sign: *For small enema*
5. Take: Atropine sulfate 0.0003  
Papaverine hydrochloride 0.02  
Sugar 0.2  
Mix to make powder  
Give of such doses 20 in number  
Sign: *Take 1 powder 2 times a day*
6. Take: Ophthalmic films with Kanamycin sulfate  
100 in number  
Give. Sign: *Apply 1 film on the cornea once a day*
7. Take: Sodium sulfate 100.0  
Give. Sign: *Take 1 tablespoonful on an empty stomach with 2 glasses of water*
8. Take: Resorcin 0.5  
Salicylic acid 1.0  
Vaseline to 50.0  
Mix to make ointment  
Give. Sign: *Apply to the affected skin area*
9. Take: Magnesium basic carbonate  
Sodium hydrocarbonate each of 0.5  
Give of such doses 10 in number in tablets  
Sign: *Take 1 tablet 3 times a day*
10. Take: Tablets of calcium gluconate 0.5 20 in number

Give. Sign: *Take 1 tablet 3 times a day before meals*

11. Take: Sodium bromide 6.0  
Codeine phosphate 0.12  
Give. Sign: *1 powder 3 times a day*
12. Take: Sulfacyl-sodium 1.0  
Lanolin  
Vaseline in equal quantity to 5.0  
Mix to make ointment  
Give  
Sign: *Apply under the lid 3 times a day*
13. Take: Papaverine hydrochloride 0.02  
Phenobarbital 0.01  
Sugar 0.3  
Mix to make powder  
Give of such doses 10 in number  
Sign: *Take 1 powder 3 times a day*
14. Take: Phenobarbital 0.06  
Sugar 0.2  
Mix to make powder  
Give of such doses 10 in number  
Sign: *Take 1 powder 1 hour before meals*
15. Take: Codeine 0.015  
Sodium hydrocarbonate 0.25  
Give of such doses 10 in number in tablets  
Sign: *Take 1 tablet 2 times a day*
16. Take: Ephedrine hydrochloride 0.025  
Sugar 0.3  
Mix to make powder  
Give of such doses 12 in number  
Sign: *Take 1 powder 3 times a day*
17. Take: Iodine 0.1  
Potassium iodide 0.2  
Peppermint oil II drops  
Glycerin to 10.0  
Mix to make ointment  
Give. Sign: *Apply to mucous coat of pharynx once a day within 10 days*
18. Take: Acetylsalicylic acid

Phenacetin each of 0.25  
Caffeine 0.05  
Give of such doses 12 in number in tablets  
Sign: *Take 1 tablet for heafache*

19. Take: Liniment of methyl salicylate 50.0  
Give. Sign: *Rub in depigmentation areas twice a day*

**Exercise 4. Write in Latin the following INN names, find known to you common stems, give their definitions:**

benzobarbital, adiphenin, demoxytocin, alimenazin, methandriol, triazolam, methylprednisolone, midazolam, thioridazine, hydrocortisone, sulfathiazole, fluphenazine, bifonazole, hydroxycarbamide, methyl salicylate, bendazole, thioproperazine, mebendazole, oxytetracycline, phytomenadione, pheniramine, methyltestosterone, phenoxymethylpenicillin, levomepromazine, omeprazole, oxytocon, phenobarbital.

Revision

Lesson  
7

## 10. Latin chemical nomenclatures:

- Latin names of chemical elements;
- Latin names of acids;
- Latin names of oxides, peroxides and hydroxides;
- Latin names of salts.

## 7.2 REVIEW OF THE VOCABULARY

Revise all pharmaceutical terms of this manual (part “Vocabulary” in each lesson).

## 7.3 FINAL TEST SAMPLE

### *1. Translate into Latin:*

1. Take: Bromcamphor 0.1  
Chinidine sulfate 0.05  
Mix to make powder  
Give. Sign:
2. Take: Tablet of Furacilin 0.02  
Give of such doses 10 in number  
Sign:
3. Take: Liniment of aloe 50.0  
Give  
Sign:
4. Take: Barbital-sodium 0.5  
Cacao oil in sufficient quantity to make rectal suppository  
Give of such doses 12 in number  
Sign:
5. Take: Retabolil oily solution 5% – 1.0 mL  
Give of such doses 2 in number in ampules  
Sign:

### *2. Translate into Latin:*

1. Yellow mercury oxide.
2. Suppositories with diphenhydramine.
3. Tablets of ascorbic acid.

4. Magnesium oxide.
5. Sulfacyl-sodium solution.
6. Ethylic alcohol.
7. Fluid extract of aloe.
8. Tablets of lipoic acid.
9. Thiopental-sodium in ampoules.
10. Peppermint leaves.

**3. Write in Latin the following INN names, find known to you common stems, give their definitions:**

- |                         |                |
|-------------------------|----------------|
| 1. dibazol              | 4. anaesthesin |
| 2. desoxycorticosterone | 5. aminazin    |
| 3. mycoseptin           | 6. medazepam   |

## **7.4 HOMEWORK**

1. Revise the theoretical material of Lessons 1-6.
2. Revise the vocabulary of Lessons 1-6.
3. Practice Exercises No. 1, 3, 4– in written form; 2 – orally

## **7.5 EXERCISES**

**Exercise 1. Translate into Latin pharmaceutical terms as follows:**

retinol acetate oily solution, thiopental-sodium in ampoules, sulfacyl-sodium ointment, sodium sulfate, sodium nitrite, sulfadimezine in tablets, solution of norsulfazole-sodium, ethazol in tablets, dibazol with papaverine, soluble saluzide, sulfapyridazine-sodium, soluble streptocide, ethylic solution of methylthionium chloride, adonizide solution in ampoules, isotonic solution of sodium chloride, ophthalmic films with pilocarpine hydrochloride, yellow mercury oxide, ethylic iodine solution, granules of ethazol-sodium for children, fluid aloe extract for injections, «Tetrafolevit» tablets, lead plaster, liniment of soluble streptocide, ethylic ergocalciferol solution, tablets of nicotinic acids.

**Exercise 2. Translate prescriptions into English:**

1. Recīpe: Unguenti Tetracyclini 1% – 50,0  
Da. Signa: *For compresses on the inflammated area*
2. Recīpe : Linimenti Synthomycini 5% – 25,0  
Da. Signa: *For bandages on the inflammated area*
3. Recīpe: Solutiōnis Phosphoestroli 6% – 5 ml  
Da tales doses numēro 30 in ampūllis  
Signa: *5 mL i.v. within 30 days*
4. Recīpe: Solutiōnis Acidi nicotinīci 1% – 1 ml  
Da tales doses numēro 20 in ampūllis  
Signa: *2 mL i.m. 3 times a day*
5. Recīpe: Methyloestradioli 0,00002  
Dentur tales doses numēro 20 in tabulettis  
Signētur: *Take 1 tablet once a day*
6. Recīpe: Emetini hydrochlorīdi 0,02  
Sacchāri 0,2  
Misce, fiat pulvis  
Da tales doses numēro 10  
Signa: *After taking 1 powder drink 1L water*
7. Recīpe: Procaini 0,1  
Olei Cacao ad 3,0  
Misce, fiat suppositorium rectāle  
Da tales doses numēro 6  
Signa: *Insert 1 suppository in rectum*
8. Recīpe: Hexobarbitali-natrii 1,0  
Dentur tales doses numēro 2  
Signētur: *Dissolve in 10 mL of water for injection, introduce i.v.*
9. Recīpe: Acīdi hydrochlorīci 1 ml  
Pepsini 2,0  
Aquae destillātae ad 100 ml  
Misce. Da. Signa: *1 teaspoonful 3 times a day before meals*
10. Recīpe: Ethyli aminobenzoātis 0,2  
Olei Cacāo ad 3,0

Misce, fiat suppositorium rectāle  
Da tales doses numēro 10  
Signa: *Insert 1 suppository in rectum*

11. Recīpe: Phenobarbitali 0,02  
Bromisovali 0,3  
Glucosi 0,5  
Misce, fiat pulvis  
Da tales doses numēro 20  
Signa: *Take 1 powder 2 times a day within 2 weeks*
12. Recīpe: Solutiōnis Acīdi borīci 1% – 20 ml  
Mentholi 0,75  
Zinci oxŷdi  
Talci ana 15,0  
Glycerini  
Spirītus aethylīci 70% – ana 20 ml  
Misceātur. Detur. Signētur: *Apply to the affected skin area for pruritus*
13. Recīpe: Solutiōnis Acīdi borīci 2% – 10 ml  
Dimedroli 0,1  
Solutiōnis Epinephrini hydrochlorīdi 0,1% – guttas X  
Misce. Da. Signa: *5 drops into the nose 3 times a day*
14. Recīpe: Phytini 0,25  
Dentur tales doses numēro 30 in tabulettis  
Signētur: *Take 1 tablet 3 times a day within 6 weeks*

**Exercise 4. Translate prescriptions into Latin:**

1. Take: Erythromycin ointment 1% – 15.0  
Give. Sign: *For bandages on skin on the inflamed infiltrate area*
2. Take: Solution of silver solution 10% – 20 mL  
Give  
Sign: *For cauterizing*
3. Take: Chlorophyllipt oily solution 2% -100.0  
Give  
Sign: *Apply to the affected skin areas*

4. Take: Riboflavin  
Thiamine chloride each of 0.01  
Ascorbic acid 0.05  
Nicotinic acid 0.01  
Glucose 0.2  
Mix to make powder  
Give of such doses 20 in number  
Sign: *Take 1 powder 3 times a day*
5. Take: Sodium chloride 4.75  
Potassium chloride 1.5  
Sodium acetate 2.6  
Sodium hydrocarbonate 1.0  
Water for injection to 1000 mL  
Mix. Sterilize!  
Give. Sign: *For i.v. infusions*
6. Take: Zinc sulfate  
Lead acetate each of 1.0  
Distilled water to 200 mL  
Mix. Give  
Sign: *For instillation into urethra*
7. Take: Trimeperidine hydrochloride 0.02  
Cacao oil in sufficient quantity to make  
rectal suppositories 6 in number  
Give  
Sign: *Insert 1 suppository in rectum for pains*
8. Take: Phenoboline oily solution 5% – 1.0  
Give of such doses 6 in number in ampules  
Sign: *Introduce 1 mL i.m. once a day within 7 days (10 injections in total)*
9. Take: Chinine hydrochloride 1.0  
Phenyl salicylate 2.0  
Zinc oxide 5.0  
Vaseline to 50.0  
Mix to make ointment  
Give. Sign: *For external use*
10. Take: «Anusol» suppositories 10 in number  
Give. Sign: *Insert 1 suppository in rectum 3 times a day*

11. Take: Belladonna extract 0.015  
 Procaine  
 Streptocide each of 0.1  
 Collargol 0.01  
 Solution of epinephrine hydrochloride 0.18% – IV drops  
 Cacao oil to 3.0  
 Mix to make rectal suppository  
 Give of such doses 12 in number  
 Sign: *Insert 1 suppository in rectum*
12. Take: Solution of apomorphine hydrochloride 1% – 1 mL  
 Give of such doses 5 in number in ampules  
 Sign: *Introduce 0.5 mL s.c.*
13. Take: Infusion of valerian root 20.0 – 200 mL  
 Sodium bromide  
 Potassium bromide each of 3.0  
 Mix. Give  
 Sign: *Take 1 tablespoonful 3 times a day*
14. Take: Adoniside  
 Belladonna tincture each of 5 mL  
 Valerian tincture  
 Lilly-of-the-valley tincture each of 10 mL  
 Sodium bromide 3.0  
 Codeine phosphate 0.2  
 Menthol 0.5  
 Mix. Give  
 Sign: *Take 25 drops 3 times daily*
15. Take: Camphor oily solution 20% – 2 mL  
 Give of such doses 6 in number in ampules  
 Sign: *Introduce 2.0 mL s.c.*
16. Take: Folic acid 0.0008  
 Ascorbic acid 0.1  
 Give of such doses 50 in number in tablets  
 Sign: *Take 1 tablet 3 times daily at mealtimes within one month*
17. Take: Ethylmorphine hydrochloride 0.1  
 Vaseline 10.0  
 Mix to make ointment  
 Give. Sign: *Apply with glass stick under lid margin*

18. Take: Lincomycin hydrochloride 0.25  
Give of such doses 20 in number  
Sign: *Introduce 4 mL 3 times daily*
19. Take: Isotonic solution of sodium chloride ad 100 mL  
Thiosulfate 10.0  
Mix  
Give. Sign: *Take 2 tablespoonful every 10 minutes*
20. Take: Thiamine bromide 3% – 1 mL  
Give of such doses 10 in number in ampules  
Sign: *Introduce 1 mL i.m.*
21. Take: Zinc sulfate  
Lead acetate each of 0.3  
Distilled water to 200 mL  
Mix. Give. Sign: *For irrigation*
22. Take: Calcium glycerophosphate  
Calcium lactate each of 0.25  
Give of such doses 20 in number in tablets  
Sign: *Take 1 tablet 3 times daily*

**Exercise 4. Write in Latin the following INN names, find known to you common stems, give their definitions:**

chloralphenicom, methionine, cephalosporin, hydrochlorothiazide, erythromycin, benzylpenicillin, desoxycortone, clomethiazole, glycerol, phenazone, aminiphenazone, astemizole, glycine, neomycin, theophylline, estramustine, pseudoephedrine, sulfinpyrazine, cyclobarbitol, penicillamin, pyricarbate, levomenthol, streptomycin, phenylpropanolamine, cycloserine, dipyraridamole, methylergometrin, medroxyprogesterone, dihydralazine, benzocaine.

## List of Common Latin Abbreviations used in Medical Prescriptions

This list here does not mean such abbreviations should be used. All abbreviations carry an increased risk for confusion and misinterpretation and should be used cautiously.

Abbreviation	Latin	English meaning
aa	ana	of each
ad	ad	up to
a.c.	ante cibum	before meals
a.d.	auris dextra	right ear
ad lib.	ad libitum	use as much as one desires; freely
admov.	admove	apply
agit	agita	stir/shake
alt. h.	alternis horis	every other hour
a.m.	ante meridiem	morning, before noon
amp	ampula	ampule
aq	aqua	water
a.l., a.s.	auris laeva, auris sinistra	left ear
a.u.	auris utraque	both ears
bis	bis	twice
b.d./b.i.d.	bis in die	twice daily
bol.	bolus	as a large single dose (usually intravenously)
BUCC	bucca	inside cheek
cap., caps.	capsula	capsule
c, c.	cum	with (usually written with a bar on top of the "c")
cib.	cibus	food
cc	cum cibo	with food, (but also cubic centimetre)
cr., crm	cremor	cream
dieb. alt.	diebus alternis	every other day
div.	divide	divide
d.t.d.	dentur tales doses	give of such doses
e.m.p.	ex modo prescripto	as directed
emuls.	emulsum	emulsion
et	et	and
ex aq	ex aqua	in water
fl., fld.	fluidus	fluid
ft.	fiat	make; let it be made
g		gram
gtt(s)	gutta(e)	drop(s)
h, hr	hora	hour

h.s.	hora somni	at bedtime
IM	intramuscularis	intramuscular (with respect to injections)
inj.	injectio	injection
IP	intraperitonealis	intraperitoneal
IV	intravenosus	intravenous
lin	linimentum	liniment
liq	liquor	solution
mane	mane	in the morning
M.	misce	mix
m, min	minimum	a minimum
m.d.u.	more dicto utendus	to be used as directed
mg		milligram
mist.	mistura	mix
mitte	mitte	send
mL		millilitre
nebul	nebula	a spray
noct.	nocte	at night
non rep.	non repetatur	no repeats
o.d.	oculus dexter	right eye
o.s.	oculus sinister	left eye
o.u.	oculus uterque	both eyes
per	per	by or through
p.c.	post cibum	after meals
pig./pigm.	pigmentum	paint
p.m.	post meridiem	evening or afternoon
PRN, prn	pro re nata	as needed
p.o.	per os	by mouth or orally
p.r.	per rectum	by rectum
pulv.	pulvis	powder
PV	per vaginam	via the vagina
q	quaque	every
q.a.d.	quoque alternis die	every other day
q.a.m.	quaque die ante meridiem	every day before noon
q.d.s.	quater die sumendus	four times a day
q.p.m.	quaque die post meridiem	every day after noon
q.h.	quaque hora	every hour
q.h.s.	quaque hora somni	every night at bedtime
q.1h, q.1 <sup>o</sup>	quaque 1 hora	every 1 hour; (can replace "1" with other numbers)
q.d.	quaque die	every day
q.i.d.	quater in die	four times a day
qgh	quater quaque hora	every four hours

q.s.	quantum sufficiat	a sufficient quantity
R	rectalis	rectal
rep., rept.	repetatur	repeats
s	sine	without (usually written with a bar on top of the "s")
s.a.	secundum artum	use your judgement
SC, subc, subcut, subq, SQ	subcutaneus	subcutaneous
sig	signa	write on label
sol	solutio	solution
s.o.s., si op. sit	si opus sit	if there is a need
ss	semis	one half
stat	statim	immediately
supp	suppositorium	suppository
syr	syrupus	syrup
tab	tabella	tablet
tal., t	talus	such
troche	trochiscus	lozenge
t.i.d.	ter in die	three times a day
t.d.s.	ter die sumendum	three times a day
tr, tinc., tinct.	tinctura	tincture
u.d., ut. dict.	ut dictum	as directed
ung.	unguentum	ointment
vag	vaginalis	vaginally

## Latin – English Vocabulary

<b>A</b>	
acetas, ātis m	acetate
Acīdum acetylsalicylīcum	acetylsalicylic acid
Acīdum ascorbinīcum	ascorbic acid
Acīdum benzoīcum	benzoic acid
Acīdum borīcum	boric acid
Acīdum folīcum	folic acid
Acīdum hydrochlorīcum	hydrochloric acid
Acīdum lipoīcum	lipoic acid
Acīdum nicotinīcum	nicotinic acid
Acīdum salicylīcum	salicylic acid
activātus, a, um	activated
ad 10,0	add up to 10 g
ad usum externum (internum)	for external (internal) use
Adōnis (īdis m, f) vernālis (e)	spring adonis
aethylīcus, a, um	ethyl
albus, a, um	white
Aloē, ēs f	aloe
Althaea, ae f	marshmallow
Aluminium, i n	aluminium
Amŷlum, i n	starch
ana	of each
Anaesthesinum, i n	an(a)esthesine
Anaesthesolum, i n	anaesthesol
Anusolum, i n	anusol
aqua, ae f	water
Argentum, i n	silver
<b>B</b>	
Belladonna, ae f	belladonna
benzoas, ātis m	benzoate

Bismūthum, i n	bismuth
bromīdum, i n	bromide
<b>C</b>	
Cacao (no declension)	cacao
Calcium, i n	calcium
Camphora, ae f	camphor
Capsīcum, i n	capsicum
Carbo, ōnis m	carbon, charcoal
Chamomilla, ae f	chamomile
chlorīdum, i n	chloride
Coffeinum, i n	caffeine
Convallaria, ae f	lilly-of-the-valley
cortex, ĩcis m	bark
Crataegus, i f	hawthorn
Cuprum, i n	copper
<b>D</b>	
decoctum, i n	decoction
destillātus, a, um	distilled
Digitālis, is f	foxglove, digitalis
<b>E</b>	
emplastrum, i n	plaster
emulsum, i n	emulsion
Epinephrinum, i n	epinephrine
Estriolum, i n	estriol
extractum, i n	extract
<b>F</b>	
Ferrum, i n	iron
flavus, a, um	yellow
flos, floris m	flower
fluīdus, a, um	fluid

folium, i n Frangŭla, ae f	leaf buckthorn
<b>G</b>	
gluconas, ātis m Glucosum, i n glycerinōsus, a, um granŭlum, i n	gluconate glucose glyceric granule
<b>H</b>	
Helianthus, i m Hydrargŷrum, i n hydras, ātis m hydrocarbonas, ātis m hydrochlorīdum, i n Hydrogenium, i n hydroxŷdum, i n	sunflower mercury hydrate hydrocarbonate hydrochloride hydrogen hydroxide
<b>I</b>	
in ampŭllis in charta cerāta in tabulettis	in ampules in waxed paper in tablets
infŭsum, i n iodīdum, i n Iodoformium, i n Iodum, i n isotonīcus, a, um	infusion iodide iodoform iodine isotonic
<b>K</b>	
Kalium, i n	potassium
<b>L</b>	
lactas, ātis m linimentum, i n	lactate liniment

Linum, i n	flax, linum
<b>M</b>	
Magnesium, i n; Magnium, i n Megestrolum, i n membranŭla (ae f) ophthalmīca (us, a, um) (lamella ophthalmīca)	magnesium megestrol ophthalmic film
Mentha, ae f (piperita) Methylī salicylas (ātis m) mucilāgo, ĩnis f	mint (peppermint) methyl salicylate mucilage
<b>N</b>	
Natrium, i n nitrās, ātis m numĕro (20)	sodium nitrate (20) in number
<b>O</b>	
Oestronum, i n oleōsus, a, um Oleum Ricīni	estrone oily castor oil
olĕum, i n orotas, ātis m oxŷdum, i n	oil orotate oxide
<b>P</b>	
pasta, ae f pectorālis, e peroxŷdum, i n Phenylī salicylas (ātis m) phosphas, ātis m piperītus, a, um	paste pectoral peroxide phenyl salicylate phosphate peppery
Plantāgo, ĩnis m Platyphyllinum, i n	plantain platyphylline

Plumbum, i n pro infantibus pro injectionibus	lead for children for injections
pulvis, ěris m	powder
<b>Q</b>	
quantum satis Quercus, us f	a sufficient quantity oak
<b>R</b>	
radix, ěcis f Ricinus, i m	root castor (castor oil plant)
<b>S</b>	
Saccharum, i n salicylas, ātis m Salvia, ae f sedatīvus, a, um semen, ĩnis n siccus, a, um solubĭlis, e	sugar salicylate sage sedative seed dry soluble
solutĭo, ōnis f specĭes, ěrum f spirituŏsus, a, um spirĭtus, us m stilus, i m stomachĭcus, a, um subcarbonas, ātis m subnitrās, ātis m subtilissĭmus, a, um sulfas, ātis m Sulfur, ũris n	solution medicinal plant mixture alcoholic alcohol stick (medicinal) stomachic basic carbonate basic nitrate finest, very fine sulfatate sulfur
suppositorĭum, i n suppositorĭum rectāle (vagināle)	suppository • rectal (vaginal) suppository

<b>T</b>	
tabuletta, ae f	tablet
tetraboras, ātis m	tetraborate
tinctūra, ae f	tincture
unguentum, i n	ointment
<b>U</b>	
Urtīca, ae f	nettle
<b>V</b>	
Valeriāna, ae f	valerian
<b>X</b>	
Xeroformium, i n	xeroform
<b>Z</b>	
Zincum, i n	zinc

## English-Latin Vocabulary

<b>A</b>	
acetate	acetas, ātis m
acetylsalicylic acid	Acīdum acetylsalicylīcum
activated	activātus, a, um
add up to 10 g	ad 10,0
alcohol	spirītus, us m
alcoholic	spirituōsus, a, um
aloe	Aloë, ës f
aluminium	Aluminium, i n
an(a)esthesine	Anaesthesinum, i n
anaesthesol	Anaesthesolum, i n
anusol	Anusolum, i n
ascorbic acid	Acīdum ascorbinīcum
<b>B</b>	
bark	cortex, ĩcis m
basic carbonate	subcarbonas, ātis m
basic nitrate	subnitrās, ātis m
belladonna	Belladonna, ae f
benzoate	benzoas, ātis m
benzoic acid	Acīdum benzoīcum
bismuth	Bismūthum, i n
boric acid	Acīdum borīcum
bromide	bromīdum, i n
buckthorn	Frangŭla, ae f
<b>C</b>	
cacao	Cacao (no declension)
caffeine	Coffeinum, i n
calcium	Calcium, i n
camphor	Camphora, ae f

capsicum	Capsicum, i n
carbon, charcoal	Carbo, ōnis m
castor (castor oil plant)	Ricinus, i m
castor oil	Oleum Ricini
chamomile	Chamomilla, ae f
chloride	chloridum, i n
copper	Cuprum, i n
<b>D</b>	
decoction	decoctum, i n
distilled	destillatus, a, um
dry	siccus, a, um
<b>E</b>	
emulsion	emulsum, i n
epinephrine	Epinephrinum, i n
estriol	Estriolum, i n
estrone	Oestronum, i n
ethyl	aethylicus, a, um
extract	extractum, i n
<b>F</b>	
finest, very fine	subtilissimus, a, um
flax, linum	Linum, i n
flower	flos, floris m
fluid	fluidus, a, um
folic acid	Acidum folicum
for children	pro infantibus
for external (internal) use	ad usum externum (internum)
for injections	pro injectionibus
foxglove, digitalis	Digitalis, is f
<b>G</b>	
gluconate	gluconas, ātis m

glucose	Glucosum, i n
glyceric	glycerinōsus, a, um
granule	granŭlum, i n
<b>H</b>	
hawthorn	Crataegus, i f
hydrate	hydras, ātis m
hydrocarbonate	hydrocarbonas, ātis m
hydrochloric acid	Acīdum hydrochlorīcum
hydrochloride	hydrochlorīdum, i n
hydrogen	Hydrogenium, i n
hydroxide	hydroxŷdum, i n
<b>I</b>	
in ampules	in ampŭllis
in number(20)	numĕro (20)
in tablets	in tabulettis
in waxed paper	in charta cerāta
infusion	infŭsum, i n
iodide	iodīdum, i n
iodine	Iodum, i n
iodoform	Iodoformium, i n
iron	Ferrum, i n
isotonic	isotonīcus, a, um
<b>L</b>	
lactate	lactas, ātis m
lead	Plumbum, i n
leaf	folium, i n
lilly-of-the-valley	Convallaria, ae f
liniment	linimentum, i n
lipoic acid	Acīdum lipoīcum
<b>L</b>	

<b>M</b>	
magnesium	Magnesium, i n; Magnium, i n
marshmallow	Althaea, ae f
medicinal plant mixture	speciēs, ērum f
megestrol	Megestrolum, i n
mercury	Hydrargyrum, i n
methyl salicylate	Methylī salicylas (ātis m)
mint (peppermint)	Mentha, ae f (piperita)
mucilage	mucilāgo, ĩnis f
<b>N</b>	
nettle	Urtīca, ae f
nicotinic acid	Acīdum nicotinīcum
nitrate	nitras, ātis m
<b>O</b>	
oak	Quercus, us f
of each	ana
oil	olĕum, i n
oily	oleōsus, a, um
ointment	unguentum, i n
ophthalmic film	membranŭla (ae f) ophthalmīca (us, a, um) (lamella ophthalmīca)
orotate	orotas, ātis m
oxide	oxŷdum, i n
<b>P</b>	
paste	pasta, ae f
pectoral	pectorālis, e
peppery	piperītus, a, um
peroxide	peroxydum, i n
phenyl salicylate	Phenylī salicylas (ātis m)
phosphate	phosphas, ātis m

plantain	Plantāgo, ĩnis m
plaster	emplastrum, i n
platyphylline	Platyphyllinum, i n
potassium	Kalium, i n
powder	pulvis, ěris m
<b>R</b>	
root	radix, ĩcis f
<b>S</b>	
sage	Salvia, ae f
salicylate	salicylas, ātis m
salicylic acid	Acĭdum salicylicum
sedative	sedatĭvus, a, um
seed	semen, ĩnis n
silver	Argentum, i n
sodium	Natrium, i n
soluble	solubĭlis, e
solution	solutĭo, ōnis f
spring adonis	Adōnis (ĭdis m, f) vernālis (e)
starch	Amĭlum, i n
stick (medicinal)	stilus, i m
stomachic	stomachĭcus, a, um
a sufficient quantity	quantum satis
sugar	Sacchārum, i n
sulfate	sulfas, ātis m
sulfur	Sulfur, ũris n
sunflower	Helianthus, i m
suppository	suppositorĭum, i n
rectal (vaginal) suppository	suppositorĭum rectāle (vagināle)
<b>T</b>	
tablet	tabulettā, ae f
tetraborate	tetraboras, ātis m

tincture	tinctūra, ae f
<b>V</b>	
valerian	Valeriāna, ae f
<b>W</b>	
water	aqua, ae f
white	albus, a, um
<b>X</b>	
xeroform	Xeroformium, i n
<b>Y</b>	
yellow	flavus, a, um
<b>Z</b>	
zinc	Zincum, i n

## Common stems

<b>-aesthes-, -aesth-, -asthes-, -esthes-</b>	anesthetics (drugs that cause <i>anesthesia</i> —reversible loss of sensation)
<b>-aeth-</b>	ethyl group
<b>-benz-</b>	benzole derivatives
<b>-cain-</b>	local anaesthetics (-caine-)
<b>-camph-</b>	camphor derivatives
<b>-cillin-</b>	antibiotics (penicillins)
<b>-cyclin- / -cycl-</b>	antibiotics (tetracycline derivatives)
<b>-cyt-</b>	cytostatics (killing cancer cells) - from the Greek <i>cytos</i> - cell
<b>-ephedr-</b>	alkaloid derived from the plant <i>Ephedra sinica</i>
<b>-erythr-, -eryth-</b>	from the Greek <i>erythros</i> – red
<b>-estr-, -oestr-</b>	estrogens – female sex hormones
<b>-form-</b>	formic acid derivatives
<b>-glyc-, -gluc-</b>	from the Greek <i>glykys</i> – sweet
<b>-haem-</b>	from the Greek <i>haema</i> – blood
<b>-hydr-</b>	refers to <i>hydrogen, water or hydroxyl group</i>
<b>-menth-</b>	from the Latin <i>mentha</i> - mint
<b>-meth-</b>	methyl group
<b>-morph-</b>	morphine derivates
<b>-mycin- / -myc(o)-</b>	antibiotics, produced by <i>Streptomyces</i> strain
<b>-oxy-</b>	oxygen derivatives
<b>-phen-</b>	phenyl group
<b>-phyll-</b>	theophylline derivatives (-phylline)
<b>-phyt-</b>	from the Greek <i>phyton</i> – plant
<b>-poly-</b>	from the Greek <i>polys</i> – more than one or many
<b>-pyr-</b>	antipyretics (drugs that reduce fever)
<b>-test-</b>	testosterone derivatives (male sex hormone)

<b>-theo-</b>	from the Latin <i>thea</i> – tee
<b>-thi-</b>	sulfur
<b>-thym-</b>	drugs from thymus gland
<b>-thyr-</b>	drugs for treatment of the thyroid gland
<b>-yl-</b>	names of radicals
<b>-zep-</b>	antianxiety drug - diazepam derivatives
<b>-zid-, -zin-, -zol-, -az(a)-, -(a)zon-</b>	azo compounds

# Greek-Latin Clinical Terminology

**Introduction  
to Clinical  
Terminology.  
Combining Forms  
Denoting Pathological  
Conditions**

# Lesson 1

terminology is one of the most complicated terminological systems. It amounts to half a million medical terms. It includes all nomenclatures (Terminologia Anatomica, Nomenclature of Bacteria, Virus Nomenclature, Global Medical Device Nomenclature etc.), the International Classification of Diseases, all names of drugs, medical abbreviations and others.

2. The object of our course is the **Cinical Terminology** - medical terms derived from Greek and Latin words used in the clinical medicine. It is estimated that the number of clinical terms (diseases, symptoms, signs, treatment, procedures, etc.) amounts to ca. 80,000.

3. The medical terminology has a long history. Almost all the clinical terms derive from Greek, because the ancestor language of medicine is the Greek language. The *Concerning Nature* of Acmaeon of Croton (5th century BC) might be the earliest example of Greek medical literature. Hippocrates of Cos (ca. 460 BC – 370 BC), an ancient Greek physician, is considered to be the father of medical terminology. He is the author of about seventy medical works. The Latin clinical word elements are few (vasculo-, -tensio, etc.).

4. It may seem like an impossible task to memorize ca. 80,000 clinical terms. But it is not necessary. The clinical terms are the so called “classical compounds” composed from Greek and Latin elements. In order to understand clinical terminology you should memorize only several hundred such word elements. It will enable you to form thousands of complex clinical terms. The word elements of clinical terms are called “**combining forms**” (also “**classical elements**”). The *Combining Forms* are word elements derived from Greek and Latin, which have a fixed meaning and spelling and are designed to combine with another combining form, e.g., *arthr(o)-* combines with *-graphia* to form *arthrographia* (radiography of a joint).

*Note: some authors define a “combining form” only as a root of the word with the combining vowel –o-.*

5. The combining forms have usually a fixed position in a medical term. There are three types of the combining forms:

- *root*: (root is part of the word that comprises the primary meaning of the term): **nephritis**,
- *suffixes* (suffix is a word element which is placed after the stem of a word): **nephralgia**,
- *prefixes* (prefix is a word element which is placed before the stem of a word): **abulia**.

Some combining forms can be both root and suffix word elements, e.g., *megalo/splenia* = *spleno/megalia* (abnormal enlargement of the spleen).

Between two combining forms a combining vowel **–o-** is used, e.g. in the clinical term *nephropathia* (any disease of the kidney) *neph-* is a root, *-pathia* is a suffix, and **–o-** is a combining vowel. It should be noted that combining vowels may be

used between two root words, or between a root word and a suffix, but they are never used between prefixes and root words.

6. When you analyze a medical term, begin from the suffix. Next read the root, that gives the essential meaning of the word, and then the prefix, that gives an additional meaning to the term:

### PERINEPHRITIS

<b>peri-</b>	<b>nephr-</b>	<b>-itis</b>
surrounding	←kidney	←inflammation

Putting together the meaning of the suffix, the root and the prefix this term means **"inflammation of the tissues surrounding a kidney"**

7. The number of combining forms in one medical term can be from two to six: *spleno/porto/chol/angio/graphia, haem/angio/endo/thelio/blast/oma*.

Some combining forms can be used as separate medical terms, e.g., *phobia, spasm, necrosis, sclerosis* and others.

8. The total number of clinical combining forms amounts over 1500, but they have different use frequency. There are single combining forms which occur only in one or two medical terms, e.g., *ailurophobia* means the persistent, irrational fear of cats (from the Greek *ailouros* "cat"). *Ailuro-* is a single combining form, at the same time *-phobia* forms part of several hundreds of medical terms.

9. The number of the most active combining forms amounts approximately to 600. The common core of the clinical terminology consists of about 150 word elements. They form the basic part of the medical terminology.

10. The suffixes possess the most high frequency and productivity. By means of one suffix the long chains of similar terms can be combined. For example, after the Greek model *gastrorrhaphia* (surgical suture of the stomach) many similar terms with the suffix *-rrhaphia* were formed: *herniarrhaphia, hepatorrhaphia, colporrhaphia, enterorrhaphia, etc.*

11. By successfully completing this course, you will be able to:

- Define and recognize basic word roots, prefixes and suffixes.
- Learn to divide the clinical terms into component parts and give the meaning of the entire term.
- Learn to form clinical terms.

## 1.2 LIST OF COMBINING FORMS

The following is an alphabetical list of medical combining forms, along with their meanings and an English example.

**Roots:**

<b>Combining form</b>	<b>Meaning</b>	<b>Examples</b>
<b>acr(o)-</b>	1. extremity 2. topmost	<i>acralgia</i> <i>acrophobia</i>
<b>angi(o)-</b>	blood vessel	<i>angioneurosis</i>
<b>arthr(o)-</b>	joint	<i>arthropathy</i>
<b>cephal(o)-</b>	head	<i>cephalgia</i>
<b>enter(o)-</b>	intestine	<i>enteropathy</i>
<b>haem(at)-</b> (Eng.: hem-)	blood	<i>hematuria</i>
<b>hydr(o)-</b>	water	<i>hydremia</i>
<b>leuc(o)-</b> (Eng.: leuk-)	1. white 2. leucocytes	<i>leukocyturia</i>
<b>lip(o)-</b>	fat	<i>lipemia</i>
<b>mast(o)-</b>	breast, mammary gland	<i>mastodynia</i>
<b>nephr(o)-</b>	kidney	<i>nephropathy</i>
<b>nyct(o)-</b>	night	<i>nyctalgia</i>
<b>odont(o)-</b>	teeth	<i>odontalgia</i>
<b>oste(o)-</b>	bone	<i>osteopathy</i>
<b>proct(o)-</b>	rectum	<i>proctorrhagia</i>
<b>py(o)-</b>	pus	<i>pyorrhea</i>
<b>rhin(o)-</b>	nose	<i>rhinorrhea</i>
<b>spondyl(o)-</b>	vertebra	<i>spondylopathy</i>
<b>sial(o)-</b>	saliva, salivary glands	<i>sialorrhea</i>
<b>ur(o)-</b>	urine, urinary system	<i>uremia</i>

## Suffixes:

Combining form	Meaning	Examples
<b>-aemia</b> (Eng.: <i>-emia</i> )	blood condition	<i>anemia</i>
<b>-algia</b>	pain	<i>myalgia</i>
<b>-emēsis</b>	vomiting condition	<i>hematemesis</i>
<b>-pathia</b> (Eng.: <i>--pathy</i> )	1. general disorder; 2. sensibility, sensation 3. emotion, sense	<i>psychopathy</i> <i>hyperpathia</i> <i>apathy</i>
<b>-rrhagia</b>	bleeding	<i>enterorrhagia</i>
<b>-rrhoea</b> (Eng.: <i>-rrhea</i> )	flowing, discharge	<i>otorrhea</i>
<b>-uria</b>	1. presence of some substances in the urine; 2. urine	<i>hematuria</i> <i>anuria</i>

## Prefixes:

Combining form	Meaning	Examples
<b>a- (an-)</b>	denotes an absence of	<i>analgia</i>
<b>hyper-</b>	denotes something as 'extreme' or 'beyond normal'	<i>hypertension</i>
<b>hypo-</b>	denotes something as 'below normal'	<i>hypovolemia</i>

## 1.3 COMBINING FORMS, DENOTING PATHOLOGICAL CONDITIONS

1. The urine and blood tests are the commonly performed medical tests to determine and identify a possible disease or disorder. The combining form **-uria** means the «presence of a substance in the urine» (e.g., *leucocyturia*), but sometimes it can mean also the «urine, condition of the urine» (e.g., *nycturia*). The combining form **-aemia** means the «presence or increase of a substance in the blood» (e.g., *hyperinsulinaemia*), but sometimes it can mean also the «condition of the blood» (e.g., *oligaemia*, *hyperemia*).

2. The word element **-pathia** is generally used to denote a noninflammatory pathological condition, e.g., *arthropathy* means any joint disease. We recommend

to give the meaning of medical terms with *-pathia* as “*any disease of*”. The word element *-pathia* can mean also «sensitivity», «sensation» (e.g., *hyperpathia* – abnormal sensitivity to pain). In this meaning the English spelling is not *-pathy* but *-pathia*. The third meaning of the word element *-pathia* is «emotion» (e.g., *apathia* – lack of emotion).

3. Memorize the spelling of the combining forms **-rrhoea, -rrhagia**.
4. There are many clinical medical terms ending in **-ia**. They commonly mean «pathological or abnormal condition», «disease». The common model is: prefix **a-** + name of an organ + **-ia**, what means «congenital absence of an organ» (e.g., *acardia* – congenital absence of the heart).
5. The medical terms ending in **-ia** are always stressed on one syllable before the last (*hydrocephalía*), except the word element **-lógia**. Memorize also the placement of the stress in *apáthia*.
6. The word elements within a medical term are usually combined with the combining vowel **-o-** (arthr-**o-**pathia, haem-**o-**rrhagia).
7. If the suffix in a medical term begins with a vowel, the combining vowel **-o-** is dropped (e.g., acro- + -algia = acr/algia).
8. Medical terms include many Latin and Greek anatomical structures well known from the course «Human Anatomy»: encephal- (encephálon), septo- (septum), atrio- (atrium), colo- (colon), hepato- (hepar), oesophago- (oesophágos), ventriculo- (ventricŭlus) and many others.

## 1.4 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

10. What is the difference between the medical and clinical terminology?
11. What is the number of medical terms? What is the number of clinical terms?
12. Define the concepts as follows: “medical terminology”, “clinical terminology”, “classical elements”, “combining form”, “combining vowel”, “root”, “suffix”, “prefix”.
13. Why is Greek the basic language of the clinical terminology?
14. Who is considered to be the father of medical terminology?
15. What is the number of medical combining forms? What is the number of the most active medical combining forms?
16. What types of combining forms do you know?
17. What is the most common model of a clinical term?
18. Give all meanings of the word elements “-uria”, “-aemia”, “-pathia”?
19. Give the meaning of the combining forms “acr(o)-”, “leuc(o)-”, “-rrhagia”, “nyct(o)-”, “rhin(o)-”, “py(o)-”, “spondyl(o)-”, “enter(o)-”, “sial(o)-”.
20. How are the medical terms ending in **-ia** stressed?
21. When is the combining vowel **-o-** dropped?

## 1.5 HOMEWORK

4. Learn the theoretical material of Lesson One.
5. Learn the combining forms of this Lesson.
6. Practice Exercises No. 1, 3– orally, 2, 4 – in written form.

## 1.6 EXERCISES

**Exercise 1.** *Divide the following terms into component parts and give the meaning of the entire term:*

thoracalgia, hyperem̄sis, rhinorrhoea, mastalgia, pyuria, lipaemia, odontalgia, rhinopathia, lymphorrhoea, pyaemia, angialgia, anuria, arthropathia, proctorrhagia, nyctalgia, haematuria, hyperinsulinaemia, apathia, haemorrhagia, acephalia, hypodontia, arthralgia, hydraemia, haematem̄sis, nephropathia, hydrocephalia, spondylalgia, asialia, hypalgia, hyposialia, mastalgia, leucocyturia, hypocholesterinaemia, osteopathia, gastrorrhagia, hyperpathia, nephralgia

**Exercise 2.** *Construct medical terms with the following suffixes, give the meaning of the medical terms:*

1. –algia (odont-, nyct-, mast-, arthr-, angi-, acro-, hypo-, a-)
2. –uria (a-, py-, lip-, nyct-, haemat-, calci-, bilirubin-)
3. –aemia (a-, py-, ur-, lip-, hydr-, hyper-, bacteri-, protein-, hyper/calci-)
4. –pathia (a-, rhino-, angio-, arthro-, hyper-, masto-, nephro-, osteo-, broncho-, oesophago-, encephalo-, osteo/arthro-)

**Exercise 3.** *Write these English medical terms in Latin, give the meaning of these terms:*

asialorrhoea, spondylalgia, osteopathy, nyctalgia, lipemia, nephropathy, hydremia, hematuria, osteoarthropathy, cephalgia, hyposialia, nycturia, enteropathy, arthralgia, proctalgia, lipuria, lymphorrhoea, angialgia, hyperpathy, proctorrhagia, mastopathy, hypocholesterolemia, hypercalcemia, apathy, leukocyturia, hyperemesis, mastodynia, gastropathy, haemorrhage, hematemes̄is, odontalgia

**Exercise 4.** *Build the following medical terms:*

- 1) pain in the breast;
- 2) blood in the urine;
- 3) abnormal accumulation of fluid in the brain;
- 4) lack of blood;
- 5) headache;

- 6) increase in the quantity of blood flow;
- 7) absence of emotions;
- 8) any disease of the nose;
- 9) bloody discharge from the rectum;
- 10) discharge from the nose;
- 11) pain in the extremities;
- 12) vomiting of blood;
- 13) toothache;
- 14) any joint disease;
- 15) congenital absence of the head;
- 16) decreased salivary flow;
- 17) pain in a vertebra;
- 18) pus in the urine;
- 19) any disease of the vessels;
- 20) hemorrhage.

**Combining Forms  
Denoting Methods of  
Medical Examination,  
Size and Amount**

# Lesson 2

<b>cardi(o)-</b>	heart	<i>cardiology</i>
<b>chol(e)-</b>	bile	<i>choleemia</i>
<b>cholecyst(o)-</b>	gallbladder	<i>cholecystectomy</i>
<b>cyst(o)-</b>	urinary bladder	<i>cystoscopy</i>
<b>lapar(o)-</b>	abdomen, abdomen-wall	<i>laparoscopy</i>
<b>macr(o)-</b>	large, abnormal size	<i>macrocephaly</i>
<b>megal(o)-</b> <b>(-megalial)</b> (Eng.: -megaly)	enlargement, abnormal size	<i>megalodontia</i> <i>cephalomegaly</i>
<b>metr(o)-</b> <b>-metra</b> <b>hyster(o)-</b>	uterus	<i>metrography</i> <i>hematometra</i> <i>hysterectomy</i>
<b>micr(o)-</b>	small, abnormally small	<i>micromastia</i>
<b>olig(o)-</b>	little, few	<i>oligemia</i>
<b>ophthalm(o)-</b>	eye	<i>ophthalmoscopy</i>
<b>phleb(o)-</b>	vein	<i>phlebography</i>
<b>poly-</b>	much, many	<i>polyuria</i>
<b>pyel(o)-</b>	renal pelvis	<i>pyelography</i>
<b>salping(o)-</b>	fallopian tube	<i>salpingoscopy</i>
<b>sphygm(o)-</b>	puls	<i>sphygmography</i>
<b>thyr(o)-</b>	thyroid gland	<i>hypothyroidism</i>

### Suffixes:

<b>Combining form</b>	<b>Meaning</b>	<b>Examples</b>
<b>-gramma</b> (Eng.: -gram)	1. roentgenogram; 2. graphic record	<i>phlebogram</i> <i>hemogram</i>
<b>-graphia</b> (Eng.: -graphy)	1. radiography; 2. process of recording (non-radiographic); 3. ability to write	<i>angiography</i> <i>cardiography</i> <i>agraphia</i>
<b>-metria</b> (Eng.: -metry)	process of measuring	<i>calorimetry</i>

<b>-ōsis</b>	1. disease, pathological condition; 2. increase of blood elements; 3. multiple	<i>cheilosis</i> <i>erythrocytosis</i> <i>furunculosis</i>
<b>-penia</b>	1. presence of relatively few blood elements; 2. deficiency	<i>thrombocytopenia</i> <i>osteopenia</i>
<b>-scopia</b> (Eng.: -scopy)	examination, use of instrument for viewing	<i>gastroscopy</i>

### Prefixes:

Combining form	Meaning	Examples
<b>dys-</b>	malfunction, disorder	<i>dysphagia</i>
<b>endo-</b>	denotes something as 'inside' or 'within'	<i>endoscopy</i>

## 2.2 COMBINING FORMS, DENOTING METHODS OF MEDICAL EXAMINATION, SIZE AND AMOUNT

1. The word element **-graphia** commonly means the «radiography», «radiographic examination with contrast medium» (e.g., *phlebographia* – radiography of a vein filled with contrast medium), but it can also mean the «non-radiographic examination» (e.g., *electroencephalographia* – electronic recording of the brain activity), and «ability to write» (e.g., *dysgraphia* – impairment of the ability to write). In the last meaning the English spelling *-graphia* (not *-graphy*) is used. It is sometimes difficult to determine the meaning of a medical term ending in *-graphia*, e.g., *gastrographia* – radiography of the stomach, but *ophthalmography* – non-radiographic recording of movements of the eye.

2. The word element **-gramma** forms the meaning pair with the word element **-graphia** and has two meanings: «radiograph or radiogram - the film produced by radiography» (e.g., *phlebogramma* – a radiograph of a vein filled with contrast medium) and a «written record» (e.g., *electroencephalogramma* – a graphic record of brain waves).

3. The word element **-scopia** means the «visual examination», «visualization», commonly by means of special endoscopes for the visual inspection of inner organs (e.g., *gastroscopia* – the visual inspection of the interior of the stomach by means of a gastroscope inserted through the esophagus, *angioscopia* – the visualization of a blood vessel lumen with a flexible endoscope). *The endoscope* is an instrument used for direct visual inspection of hollow organs or body cavities.

Specially designed endoscopes are used for such examinations as bronchoscopy, cystoscopy, gastroscopy and proctoscopy. Such instruments used for a *-scopia* are designated *-scop* (e.g., *arthroscop* – an instrument for the visual examination of the interior of a joint).

4. The abnormal increase in number of the circulating blood cells is designated by means of the word element **-ōsis** (e.g., *erythrocytōsis* – an abnormal increase in the number of circulating red blood cells), the abnormal decrease in number of the circulating blood cells is designated by means of the word element **-penia** (e.g., *erythrocytopenia* – decrease in the number of circulating red blood cells):

- erythrocytōsis – erythrocytopenia
- thrombocytoōsis – thrombocytopenia (or thrombopenia)
- lymphocytoōsis – lymphocytopenia
- leucocytoōsis – leucocytopenia (or leucopenia).

5. The word element **-ōsis** can also mean «any disease, morbid state, pathological condition» – as the word element *-pathia* (e.g., *arthrōsis* – a general term for any joint disease, synonym - *arthropathia*).

6. The word element **-ōsis** can also mean «multiple» in the names of tumors or inflamed growths (e.g., *adenomatōsis* – development of multiple glandular overgrowths, *furunculōsis* – the simultaneous occurrence of a number of furuncles).

7. You should distinguish between word elements designating the size and the word elements designating the amount:

- *macro-* means «large», «abnormal size» (e.g., *macrocardia* – abnormal enlargement of the heart), *poly-* means «much, many», (e.g., *polyuria* – excessive production of urine).
- *megalo-* is the synonym to *macro-* and means also «large», «abnormal size» (e.g., *megalosplenia* – abnormal enlargement of the spleen); this word element can be a root element or a suffix element (*splenomegalia* – the same meaning).
- *micro-* means «abnormally small» (e.g., *microsplenia* – abnormal smallness of the spleen), *oligo-* means «few, little» (e.g., *oliguria* – reduced daily output of urine).

8. In the clinical terminology you can find terminological synonyms when the root elements can be both Greek and Latin with the same meaning, e.g., *angiographia* (from the Greek *angeion* "vessel") has a synonym *vasographia* (from the Latin *vas, vasis n*) – radiography of the blood vessels.

9. Memorize the terms: *hyperthyreosis* – excessive functional activity of the thyroid gland (English - hyperthyroidism) and *hypothyreosis* – insufficient production of thyroid hormones (English - hypothyroidism).

## 2.3 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. What kind of examinations can be designated by means of the word element “graphia”?
2. What is the meaning difference between “-graphia” and “-gramma”?
3. What kind of examination can be designated by means of the word element “scopia”?
4. What is an “endoscope”?
5. Name combining forms indicating abnormal increase and decrease of circulating blood cells.
6. Name all meanings of the combining form *-osis*.
7. Name combining forms indicating “abnormally large”, “abnormally small”.
8. Name combining forms indicating “much, many”, “few, little”.
9. What is the difference between *vasographia* and *angiographia*, *mammographia* and *mastographia*?
10. Give the definitions and the English translations of *hyperthyreosis* and *hypothyreosis*.

## 2.4 HOMEWORK

7. Learn the theoretical material of Lesson Two.
8. Learn the combining forms of this Lesson.
9. Practice Exercises No. 1, 3– orally, 2, 4 – in written form.

## 2.5 EXERCISES

**Exercise 1.** *Divide the following terms into component parts and give the meaning of the entire term:*

angiographia, cardiomegalia, arthrōsis, cephalometria, polyuria, cholecystographia, sphygmographia, gastralgia, hyperthyreōsis, metrographia, microcephalia, nephrographia, phlebogramma, oligosialia, leucopenia, microangiopathia, rhinoscopia, oliguria, colonoscopia, thrombocytopenia, leucocytōsis, cystoscopia, polyarthralgia, odontometria, erythrocytopenia, dysuria, cholaemia, acromegalia, oligoemia, macrodentia, craniographia, laparoscopia, cholecystopathia, megalographia, macromastia, oligodentia, agraphia, angioscopia, macrographia, nephrosis, thrombocytosis

**Exercise 2.** *Construct medical terms with the following suffixes, give the meaning of the medical terms:*

1. –graphia (a-, dys-, cyst-, angio-, aorto-, masto-, nephro-, pyelo-, sialo-, phlebo-, gastro-, cranio-, hystero-, sphygmo-, cholecysto-, angiocardio-)
2. –gramma (haemo-, phlebo-, cardio-, sphygmo-, electro/encephalo-)
3. –metria (oculo-, cysto-, calori-, cephalo-, laparo-, odonto-)
4. –scopia (rhino-, endo-, angio-, pyelo-, recto-, cysto-, broncho-, gastro-, colono-, laparo-, thoraco-, hystero-, duodeno-, laryngo-, gastro/duodeno-)
5. –penia (leuco-, lympho-, thrombo-, monocyto-, erythrocyto-)
6. –ōsis (leuc-, arthr-, thromb-, hepat-, erythrocyt-, hypo/thyre-, hyper/thyre-)

**Exercise 3. Write these English medical terms in Latin, give the meaning of these terms:**

gastroduodenoscopy, phlebography, acystia, hepatomegaly, hystero-graphy, laparohemorrhagia, ophthalmia, leukopenia, osteometry, hepatalgia, pyelography, sphygmogram, macrocephalia, cystometry, proctoscopy, rhinoscopy, monocytopenia, microphthalmus, lymphocytosis, anuria, vasopathy, metrorrhagia, cardialgia, thrombopenia, arthro-scope, salpingographia, acromegaly, micrographia, polyarthralgia, dysgraphia, bronchoscopy, hypothyroidism, tomography

**Exercise 4. Build the following medical terms:**

- 1) abnormal enlargement of the liver;
- 2) impairment of the ability to write;
- 3) congenital absence of the urinary bladder;
- 4) film produced by the radiography of the heart and vessels;
- 5) pain in several joints simultaneously;
- 6) abnormal decrease in the number of platelets in the blood;
- 7) visual examination of a joint;
- 8) abnormal enlargement of the heart;
- 9) measurement of the dimensions of the head;
- 10) examination of the nose with a speculum;
- 11) endoscopic examination of the stomach and duodenum;
- 12) writing with very large letters;
- 13) visual examination of the urinary tract with an endoscope;
- 14) diminished urine production and excretion;
- 15) increased production of red blood cells;
- 16) insufficient production of thyroid hormones;
- 17) any joint disease

## **2.6 ADDITIONAL EXERCISES: REVIEW**

**Exercise 1. Divide the following terms into component parts and give the meaning of the entire term:**

cystalgia, odontometria, colonoscopia, lipuria, rhinopathia, odontalgia, pyuria, hydraemia, arthropathia, gastrorrhagia, angialgia, cephalalgia, enteropathia, haematuria, haemorrhagia, hydrocephalia, amastia, nephropathia, nyctalga, spondylalgia, hyposialia, brachialgia, leucocyturia, osteopathia, mastalgia, hyperlipaemia, rhinorrhoea, hypalgia, thoracalgia, hyperaemia

**Exercise 2. Build the following medical terms:**

- 1) pain in the stomach;
- 2) absence of urine formation;
- 3) excessive amounts of urea in the blood;
- 4) any joint disease;
- 5) bloody discharge from the rectum;
- 6) flow of lymph from cut or ruptured lymph vessels;
- 7) endoscope for examining the interior of a joint;
- 8) congenital absence of one or both mammary glands;
- 9) night pain;
- 10) pain in the stomach;
- 11) lack of salivary flow;
- 12) heartburn;
- 13) impairment of urination;
- 14) presence of calcium in the urine;
- 15) any disease of the kidneys;
- 16) hemorrhage from the stomach;
- 17) any disease of the intestine;
- 18) headache.

Combining Forms  
Denoting  
Surgical Treatment

Lesson  
3

<b>herni(o)-</b>	hernia	<i>herniorrhaphy</i>
<b>kerat(o)-</b>	cornea	<i>ceratotomy</i>
<b>myo(s)-</b>	muscle	<i>myotomy, myositis</i>
<b>oment(o)-</b>	omentum	<i>omentohepatopexy</i>
<b>onych(o)-</b>	nail	<i>onychopathy</i>
<b>patell(o)-</b>	patella, kneecap	<i>patellectomy</i>
<b>phren(o)-</b>	diaphragm	<i>phrenectomy</i>
<b>pneum(on)-</b>	lung	<i>pneumotomy</i>
<b>pneum(at)-</b>	air, gas	<i>pneumaturia</i>
<b>splen(o)-</b>	spleen	<i>splenectomy</i>
<b>ten(o)-</b>	tendon	<i>tenomyotomy</i>
<b>trich(o)-</b>	hair	<i>trichopathy</i>

### Suffixes:

<b>Combining form</b>	<b>Meaning</b>	<b>Examples</b>
<b>-centēsis</b>	surgical puncture	<i>laparocentesis</i>
<b>-dēsis</b>	surgical operation: binding of an organ	<i>arthrodesis</i>
<b>-ectomia</b> (Eng.: <i>-ectomy</i> )	surgical removal, resection	<i>nephrectomy</i>
<b>-pexia</b> (Eng.: <i>-pexy</i> )	surgical operation: fixation	<i>colpopexy</i>
<b>-plastīca</b> (Eng.: <i>-plasty</i> )	plastic surgery, surgical repair, reconstruction	<i>rhinoplasty</i>
<b>-rrhaphia</b> (Eng.: <i>-rrhaphy</i> )	surgical suturing	<i>hysterorrhaphy</i>
<b>-rrhēxis</b>	rupture	<i>angiorrhēxis</i>
<b>-stōma</b>	opening	<i>gastrstoma</i>
<b>-stomia</b> (Eng.: <i>-stomy</i> )	creation of an opening	<i>gastrostomy</i>
<b>-tomia</b> (Eng.: <i>-tomy</i> )	surgical incision	<i>laparotomy</i>

## Prefixes:

Combining form	Meaning	Examples
<b>hemi-</b>	one-half	<i>cerebral hemispheres</i>
<b>par(a)-</b>	1. alongside with 2. abnormal	

## 3.2 COMBINING FORMS, DENOTING SURGICAL TREATMENT

1. The combining form **-plastica** means «plastic surgery». The plastic surgery is concerned with the correction or restoration of form and function. In plastic surgery, the transfer of skin tissue is a very common procedure. The most common plastic procedures are: *blepharoplasty* (reshaping of the eyelids), *mammoplasty* (lifting or reshaping of breasts), *rhinoplasty* (reshaping of the nose).
2. You should distinguish combining forms with similar spelling and close meaning as follows:
  - a. **-tomy** – suffix meaning a «surgical incision» (e.g., *gastrotomy* – incision into the stomach, *nephrotomy* – incision of a kidney);
  - b. **-ectomy** – suffix meaning the «surgical removal», «excision» of something» (e.g., *cholecystectomy* – surgical removal of the gallbladder, *nephrectomy* – surgical removal of a kidney). When used with the prefix *hemi-* it means «surgical removal of half of an organ» (e.g., *hemihepatectomy* – excision of one half of the liver);
    - «Ectomy» can be used as a separate surgical term meaning «resection»;
  - c. **-stomy** – suffix meaning a «surgical operation in which an artificial opening is created into an organ or a communication between organs» (e.g., *gastrostomy* - surgical creation of an artificial opening into the stomach, *gastrojejunostomy* - surgical creation of an artificial opening between the stomach and jejunum). Surgical procedures in which artificial openings are created are ended in the suffix *-stomy* and begin with a combining form denoting the organ or area being operated on. Such artificial openings are called «stoma», «fistula», «anastomosis». They are often used as synonyms but they have different meaning. A **stoma** is an opening, either natural or surgically created (artificial), which connects a portion of the body cavity to the outside environment. A **fistula** is an abnormal connection between two organs that normally do not connect. It is generally a disease condition, but a fistula may be surgically created for therapeutic reasons. An

**anastomosis** means a surgical joining of two ducts, blood vessels, or bowel segments to allow flow from one to the other.

3. In medical terms ending in **-stomia**, which consist of three word elements, the root word elements can be placed in no particular order: *nepbro/pyelo/stomia* – *pyelo/nepbro/stomia*.
4. Medical terms ending in **-stomia**, which consist of three (four) word elements, mean a communication between several organs; root combining forms denote the organs or areas being operated on (e.g., *duodeno/jejuno/stomia* – surgical formation of an anastomosis between the duodenum and the jejunum).
5. The combining forms **-pexia** and **-děsis** have similar meaning: «surgical procedure: fixation of an organ», but *-pexia* denotes a fixation of an organ after the abnormal lowering or prolapse, and *-děsis* – binding of an organ for immobilization.

### 3.3 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. What is «plastic surgery»? What are the most common plastic rocedures?
2. Explain the meaning difference between word elements *-tomia*, *-ectomy*, *-stomia*, *-stōma*.
3. Define the concepts as follows: “stoma”, “fistula”, “anastomosis”.
4. What does the suffix *-ectomy* in combination with the prefix *hemi-* mean?
5. What is the word-order in medical terms denoting surgical creation of a communication between several organs?
6. Give the meaning of the following word elements denoting anatomical structures: *septo-* (septum), *atrio-* (atrium), *colo-* (colon), *hepato-* (hepar), *oesophago-* (oesophagus), *laryngo-* (larynx), *tracheo-* (trachea), *gastro-* (gaster), *pharyngo-* (pharynx), *thoraco-* (thorax), *pleuro-* (pleura)
7. What is the difference between the combining forms *-pexia* and *-děsis*?

### 3.4 HOMEWORK

1. Learn the theoretical material of Lesson Three.
2. Learn the combining forms of this Lesson.
3. Practice Exercises No. 1, 3– orally, 2, 4 – in written form.

### 3.5 EXERCISES

**Exercise 1.** *Divide the following terms into component parts and give the meaning of the entire term:*

hepatotomia, micronychia, colporrhēxis, tracheostōma, amnioscopia, pneumaturia, nephrostomia, neurectomia, palatoplastīca, hepatocholecystoenterostomia, patellectomia, apneumia, tenomyotomia, oesophagectomia, myotomia, arthrotēnodēsis, onychorrhēxis, cholecystorrhaphia, tenodēsis, blepharoplastīca, patellodēsis, ablepharia, heminephrectomia, hemilaryngectomia, omentohepatopexia, enteroproctostomia, hepatoomentophrenopexia, onychia, spondylodēsis, laparocentēsis, salpingostomia, tenorrhaphia, macrocardia

**Exercise 2.** *Construct medical terms with the following suffixes, give the meaning of the medical terms:*

1. –plastīca (colo-, rhino-, teno-, arthro-, osteo-, cysto-, gastro-, kerato-, cranio-procto-, thoraco-, tracheo-, blepharo-, cystocolo-)
2. –tomia (myo-, colo-, teno-, adeno-, amnio-, arthro-, neuro-, nephro-, osteo-, pyelo-, phlebo-, cysto-, kerato-, colpo-, laparo-, pneumo-, entero-, hystero-, cholecysto-)
3. –ectomia (my-, phleb-, col-, arthr-, mast-, gastr-, pleur-, pneumon-, splen-, hyster-, salping-, pancreat-, sialaden-, hemi/hepat-, cholecyst-, hemi/nephr-, proctocol-, pleuropneumon-)
4. –stomia (colo-, nephro-, pyelo-, cholecysto-, gastro-, procto-, oesophago-, salpingo-, nephropyelo-, gastroduodeno-)
5. –stoma (gastroentero-, cysto-, nephropyelo-, duodeno-, cholecystocolo-, tracheo-)
6. –rrhexis (onycho-, colpo-, hystero-, cardio-, angio-)
7. –pexia (colo-, nephro-, gastro-, hepato-, colpo-, pneumo-, procto-, spleno-, hystero-, cholecysto-, omentohepato-)
8. –rrhaphia (teno-, neuro-, nephro-, hepato-, colpo-, spleno-, entero-, hystero-, cholecysto-, hernio-)

**Exercise 3.** *Write these English medical terms in Latin, give the meaning of these terms:*

pneumonectomy, rhinoplasty, thrombectomy, hysterrrhexis, hepatoomentophrenopexy, splenorrhaphy, heminephrectomy, hysteropexy, bronchotomy, duodenectomy, asplenia, polysplenia, coloproctectomy, phlebectomy, cholecystectomy, pharyngostome, proctoplasty, arthrotēnodesis, pneumopexy, cardiorrhexis, hysterrrhaphy, pleurocentesis, laparotomy, sialadenectomy, nephropexy, pneumopathy, nephrectomy, thoracotomy

**Exercise 4. *Build the following medical terms:***

- 1) surgical fixation of the omentum to the liver;
- 2) disease of the nail bed;
- 3) surgical repair of the patella;
- 4) incision of the chest wall;
- 5) plastic repair of a tendon;
- 6) surgical incision into the trachea;
- 7) surgical puncture of the abdomen;
- 8) establishment of a fistula between the liver and the gallbladder;
- 9) suture of a divided nerve;
- 10) plastic surgery of the eyelids;
- 11) suture of the spleen;
- 12) excision of one half of the liver;
- 13) rupture of a blood vessel;
- 14) surgical removal of the gallbladder;
- 15) congenital absence of the heart;
- 16) surgical construction of an opening into the intestine;
- 17) excision of an entire lung;
- 18) surgical fixation of the rectum

**3.6 ADDITIONAL EXERCISES: REVIEW**

**Exercise 1. *Divide the following terms into component parts and give the meaning of the entire term:***

proctorrhagia, macrocephalia, myalgia, pneumaturia, rhinoscopia, dysgraphia, anaemia, myopathia, odontalgia, lymphorrhoea, colporrhaphia, mastalgia, amnioscopia, lymphadenographia, sphygmogramma, micromastia, cephalgia, leucocyturia, trichopathia, pneumopathia, cardiomyopathia, polyarthralgia, acromegalia, amniographia, osteometria, arthrōsis, acystia, oligosialia, polyuria

**Exercise 2. *Build the following medical terms:***

- 1) any disease of the nose;
- 2) radiography of the blood vessels;
- 3) pain occurring in the spine;
- 4) film obtained by a radiography of a vein;
- 5) roentgenography of the kidneys;
- 6) examination of the amniotic cavity and fetus;
- 7) uterine bleeding;
- 8) abnormally low number of monocytes in the blood;

- 9) impairment of urination;
- 10) any disease of the liver;
- 11) blood in the urine;
- 12) roentgenologic examination of the uterus;
- 13) visual examination of the urinary tract with an endoscope;
- 14) abnormal decrease in the number of platelets in the blood;
- 15) normal enlargement of the heart;
- 16) vomiting of blood;
- 17) diminished urine production and excretion;
- 18) headache.

**Combining Forms  
Denoting  
Inflammations,  
Tumors, Diseases**

# Lesson 4

<b>gloss(o)-</b>	tongue	<i>macroglossia</i>
<b>hidr(o)-</b>	sweat	<i>hidradenitis</i>
<b>myel(o)-</b>	bone marrow	<i>myelitis</i>
<b>ot(o)-</b>	ear	<i>otopathy</i>
<b>rhabdomy(o)-</b>	striated muscle	<i>rhabdomyoma</i>
<b>tachy-</b>	rapid, accelerated	<i>tachycardia</i>
<b>typhl(o)-</b>	caecum	<i>thyphlitis</i>

### Suffixes:

<b>Combining form</b>	<b>Meaning</b>	<b>Examples</b>
<b>-iāsis</b>	disease, pathological condition	<i>nephrolithiasis</i>
<b>-ītis</b>	inflammation	<i>tonsillitis</i>
<b>-līth- (us)</b>	stone, calculus	<i>phlebolithus</i>
<b>-ōma</b>	tumor	<i>lipoma</i>
<b>-plegia</b>	paralysis	<i>monoplegia</i>
<b>-poësis</b>	formation or production of	<i>hemopoësis</i>
<b>-tensio</b>	pressure	<i>hypertension</i>
<b>-tonia</b>	1. tonus, tone 2. tension	<i>dystony</i> <i>hypertonia</i>

### Prefixes:

<b>Combining form</b>	<b>Meaning</b>	<b>Examples</b>
<b>meso-</b>	middle	<i>mesotympanitis</i>
<b>pan-</b>	all, entire	<i>panbronchitis</i>
<b>peri-</b>	denoting something with a position 'surrounding' or 'around' another	<i>pericarditis</i>

## 4.2 COMBINING FORMS, DENOTING INFLAMMATIONS, TUMORS, DISEASES

1. The medical terms ending in **-itis** denoting inflammations are often formed from the Latin names of anatomical structures: *ligamentitis* (inflammation of a ligament), *alveolitis* (inflammation of an alveolus), *gingivitis* (inflammation of the gums). They are not listed in the dictionary of this manual.
2. The names of inflammations are ended in **-itis** and begin with combining forms denoting the organ or area inflamed (e.g., *laryngitis* – inflammation of the larynx). Some prefixes in the names of inflammation give an additional meaning:
  - ❖ **para-** inflammation affecting the tissues around an organ (e.g., *paraproctitis* – inflammation affecting the tissues around the rectum);
  - ❖ **peri-** has two meanings:
    - i. as *para-*, i.e. inflammation affecting the tissues around an organ (e.g., *pericholecystitis* – inflammation of tissues around the gallbladder);
    - ii. inflammation of the outer membrane (serious coat) covering the organ (e.g., *pericarditis* – inflammation of the outer membrane that surrounds the heart); in respect to abdominal organs *peri-* can mean an inflammation of the peritoneum surrounding the organ (e.g., *pericolitis* – inflammation of the peritoneum surrounding the colon). Note: *Peritoneum is the serous membrane lining the walls of the abdominal and pelvic cavities*);
  - ❖ **endo-** – inflammation of the inner layer (e.g., *endaortitis* – inflammation of the inner layer of the aorta);
  - ❖ **pan-** – diffuse inflammation of all tissues, all layers (e.g., *pancarditis* – diffuse inflammation of the heart);
  - ❖ **mes(o)-** - inflammation of the middle layer of an organ (e.g., *mesaortitis* – inflammation of the middle layer of the aorta);
  - ❖ **poly-** inflammation of several structures (e.g., *polyarthrititis* – inflammation of several joints).
3. You should distinguish between medical terms ending in **-ōma** denoting tumors and medical terms ending in **-ōma** which have an occasional similarity with the names of tumors: e.g., stomata - *colostōma* – a stoma created in the large intestine and brought to the surface of the abdomen, *haematōma* - a localized swelling filled with blood, *glaucomā* - an increase in intraocular pressure.
4. Memorize that the names of tumors ending in *-oma* are third-declension neuter nouns (e.g., *adenōma*, *ātis n*).
5. The names of tumors ending in *-oma* with the suffix *-ōsis* denote the multiple tumors: *adenōma* + *ōsis* = *adenomatōsis* – development of multiple glandular tumors.

6. The suffix **-iāsis** commonly denotes chronic recurrent diseases (psoriāsis). In combination with *-līth* (lithiāsis) it means «presence or formation of stones (calculi)» (e.g., *urolithiāsis* – presence of calculi in the urinary system). The medical terms ending in **-līth** denote not the disease itself but calculi (e.g., *urolīthus* – urinary calculus).
7. The combining form **-tonia** means «tonus» (or *tone*). The tonus is the slight, continuous contraction of a muscle, which in skeletal muscles aids in the maintenance of posture and in the return of blood to the heart (e.g., *dystonia* – impairment of muscle tone, *hypertonia* – an abnormal increase in [muscle](#) tone).
8. The combining form **-poësis** means «formation or production» (e.g., *uropoësis* – the production and excretion of urine; *thrombocytopoësis* – formation of thrombocytes).
9. The combining form **-plegia** can be used with word elements denoting the rate of paralysis expansion: *monoplegia* – paralysis of a single limb, *diplegia* – paralysis of like parts on either side of the body, *triplegia* – paralysis of three limbs, *tetraplegia* – paralysis of all four extremities, *hemiplegia* – paralysis of one side of the body.

### 4.3 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. What is the structure of medical terms denoting inflammations?
2. What additional meaning do the names of inflammations with the prefix *para-* have?
3. What additional meaning do the names of inflammations with the prefix *peri-* have?
4. What additional meaning do the names of inflammations with the prefix *endo-* have?
5. What additional meaning do the names of inflammations with the prefix *meso-* have?
6. How are the «inflammations affecting the tissues around an organ» denoted?
7. What do the medical terms «haemangioma», «lymphadenoma», «adenoma», «osteochondroma» mean?
8. What meaning do the names of tumors with the suffix *-ōsis* have?
9. What is the meaning difference between medical terms ending in *-līth(us)* and ending in *-lithiāsis*?
10. Name the medical terms denoting *paralysis of a single limb*, *paralysis of like parts on either side of the body*, *paralysis of three limbs*, *paralysis of all four extremities*, *paralysis of one side of the body*.

## 4.4 HOMEWORK

1. Learn the theoretical material of Lesson Four.
2. Learn the combining forms of this Lesson.
3. Practice Exercises No. 1, 3– orally, 2, 4 – in written form.

## 4.5 EXERCISES

**Exercise 1.** *Divide the following terms into component parts and give the meaning of the entire term:*

endophthalmītis, adenocarcinōma, perisalpingītis, mesopharyngītis, angiōma, polyadenītis, adenolipomatōsis, phlebolīthus, glossalgia, gastroenterītis, pericōlpītis, broncholithiāsis, panaortītis, rhabdomyōma, osteoarthrītis, myelopathia, angiītis, osteochondrōma, leucopoēsis, sarcoma, blepharītis, otoplastīca, hidradenītis, lymphadenōma, arthrītis, lymphangiītis, paraproctītis, periduodenītis, endarteriītis, cystolithiāsis, typhlatonia, osteochondrītis, blepharoplegia, enteroproctostomia, glucosuria, haemangioendotheliōma, myelitis, myolipoma, thrombocytopoēsis, typhlomegalia

**Exercise 2.** *Construct medical terms with the following suffixes, give the meaning of the medical terms:*

1. –ītis (proct-, mast-, gloss-, bronch-, oste-, pan/card-, col-, peri/mettr-, laryng-, aden-, hepat-, spondyl-, rhin-, salping-, colp-, meso/tympan-, endo/phleb-, amnion-, myos-, aort-, neur-, para/cyst-, peri/cyst-, pyel-, trache-, cholecyst-, enter-, kerat-, osteo/myel-)
2. –ōma (aden-, haem/angi-, oste-, angio-, hepat-, carcin-, my-, hidr/aden-, rhabdo/my-, chondr-)
3. –lith/iāsis (sialo-, uro-, broncho-, hepato-, nephro-, pancreo-, chole-, cysto-)
4. –tonia (my/a-, a/myo-, a-, hyper-, hypo-, dys-, typhl/a-)

**Exercise 3.** *Write these English medical terms in Latin, give the meaning of these terms:*

arteriitis, adenoma, parametritis, hemangiomas, thrombophlebitis, amyotonia, enterolith, polyneuritis, mesaortitis, hemangioma, perinephritis, lymphadenitis, odontoma, gastritis, macroglossia, diplegia, hemopoiesis, endometritis, hepatolithiasis, periarteriitis, atonia, sialadenitis, myelography, panbronchitis, nephrolithiasis, gastroenterocolitis, pericholecystitis, nephritis, paraphlebitis, perilymphangiitis, enterocolitis, rhinolith, osteochondrosis, otitis, uropoiesis, typhlospasm

**Exercise 4. *Build the following medical terms:***

- 1) development of multiple glandular tumors;
- 2) inflammation of the duodenum;
- 3) benign tumor of fatty tissue;
- 4) inflammation of several joints;
- 5) benign tumor composed of abnormal blood vessels;
- 6) inflammation of the middle layer of an artery;
- 7) congenital absence of the spinal cord;
- 8) venous calculus;
- 9) inflammation of the inner layer of the aorta;
- 10) presence of calculi in the urinary system;
- 11) inflammation of the tissues surrounding a kidney;
- 12) surgical operation for fixing the cecum;
- 13) lack of muscular tonus;
- 14) inflammation of all the eye structures;
- 15) incision of the lung;
- 16) inflammation of the peritoneal coat of the stomach;
- 17) high blood pressure;
- 18) abnormally small tongue

**4.6 ADDITIONAL EXERCISES: REVIEW**

**Exercise 1. *Divide the following terms into component parts and give the meaning of the entire term:***

panalgia, pyuria, panhysterectomy, arthrosis, hepatocholecystogastrostomy, rhinorrhoea, tenoplasty, angiography, spondylalgia, gastroenterostomy, proctotomy, lipaemia, nephropathy, phlebogram, oliguria, splenectomy, hepatorrhaphy, pyeloscopy, osteoarthropathy, acromegalia, acephalia, omentonephropexia, hyposialia, spondylodēsis, mastography, odontometria, enteroscopy, thrombocytopenia, lymphocytōsis, blepharoplasty, adenotomy, cholecystotomy, sialadenectomy, laparocentēsis, cholecystopexia, cardiorrhēsis, micronychia, patellectomy,

**Exercise 2. *Build the following medical terms:***

- 1) pain in a joint;
- 2) diminished urine production and excretion;
- 3) plastic surgery of the colon;
- 4) increased amounts of lipids in the blood;

- 5) any joint disease;
- 6) surgical incision of a gland;
- 7) uterine bleeding;
- 8) abnormal increase in the number of white blood cells;
- 9) surgical excision of a joint
- 10) impairment of the ability to write;
- 11) radiography of the kidney;
- 12) surgical creation of a connection between the stomach and the jejunum;
- 13) visual examination of the pelvis and the calices of the kidney;
- 14) surgical transection of a tendon;
- 15) pain in the mammary gland;
- 16) surgical puncture of the amniotic sac;
- 17) abnormally low number of monocytes in the blood;
- 18) surgical fixation of a mobile kidney

**Combining Forms  
Denoting  
Sense and Speech  
Organs Disorders,  
Pathological  
Conditions**

# Lesson 5

<b>chrom(at)-</b>	color	<i>achromatopsia</i>
<b>claustr-</b>	enclosed space	<i>claustrophobia</i>
<b>clepto-</b>	steal	<i>cleptomania</i>
<b>derm-</b>	skin	<i>dermatosclerosis</i>
<b>dipso-</b> <b>(-dipsia)</b>	drinking alcohol	<i>dipsomania</i>
<b>erythr(o)-</b>	red color	<i>erythroptosis</i>
<b>galact(o)-</b>	milk	<i>galactorrhea</i>
<b>kak(o)-</b>	bad	<i>kakosmia</i>
<b>mono-</b>	one, single, alone	<i>monophobia</i>
<b>phon(o)-</b> <b>(-phonia)</b>	sound, voice	<i>dysphonia</i>
<b>pyro-</b>	fire, heat	<i>pyromania</i>
<b>xanth(o)-</b>	yellow	<i>xanthopsia</i>

### Suffixes:

<b>Combining form</b>	<b>Meaning</b>	<b>Examples</b>
<b>-mania</b>	abnormal compulsion or an extreme love for	<i>narcomania</i>
<b>-necrōsis</b>	tissue and cell death	<i>osteonecrosis</i>
<b>-opia, -optica,</b> <b>-opsia</b> <i>(Eng.: -opsy)</i>	visual condition or defect	<i>erythroptosis</i>
<b>-osmia</b>	sense of smell	<i>kakosmia</i>
<b>-phagia</b>	injection, swallowing	<i>dysphagia</i>
<b>-phasia</b>	speech disorder	<i>dysphasia</i>
<b>-phobia</b>	fear of; aversion to	<i>claustrophobia</i>
<b>-sclerōsis</b>	abnormal hardening of the tissue	<i>phacosclerosis</i>
<b>-spasmus</b> <i>(Eng.: -spasm)</i>	spasm, involuntary contraction	<i>blepharospasm</i>
<b>-stāsis</b>	stoppage or inhibition	<i>lymphostasis</i>
<b>-stenōsis</b>	narrowing	<i>bronchostenosis</i>

## Prefixes:

Combining form	Meaning	Examples
pro-	before, protruding	<i>procheilia</i>

## 5.2 COMBINING FORMS DENOTING SENSE AND SPEECH ORGANS DISORDERS, PATHOLOGICAL CONDITIONS

1. The combining forms **-opia**, **-opsia** are used in the ophthalmology and mean «visual defekt or condition» (e.g., *xanthopsia* - condition in which all objects appear of a yellow colour). We recommend to memorize two terms with these combining forms (it is difficult to understand them on the basis of the combining forms): *hypermetropia* – farsightedness and *myopia* – nearsightedness (shortsightedness).
2. The combining forms **-opsia** forms part of a medical term “biopsia” (English “biosy”), meaning «removal of a small piece of tissue for microscopic examination». It is the medical removal of tissue from a living subject to determine the presence or extent of a disease. The tissue is generally examined under a microscope by a pathologist.
3. The combining forms herebelow can be used both as word elements and as separate medical terms:

**Necrosis** is the death of cells and living tissue. Necrosis is caused by factors external to the cell or tissue, such as infection, toxins, or trauma.

**Stenosis** is an abnormal narrowing in a blood vessel or other tubular organ or structure. It is also sometimes called a *stricture* (as in *urethral stricture*).

**Sclerosis** is a condition characterized by hardening of tissue resulting from any of several causes, including inflammation, the deposit of mineral salts, and infiltration of connective tissue fibers.

**Stasis** is the state in which the normal flow of a body liquid stops, for example the flow of blood through vessels or of intestinal contents through the digestive tract.

**Spasm** is a sudden, involuntary contraction of a muscle, a group of muscles, or a hollow organ. It is sometimes accompanied by a sudden burst of pain.
6. A **phobia** can be also used as a separate medical term. It is an irrational, intense and persistent [fear](#) of certain situations, activities, things, animals, or people. The main symptom of this [disorder](#) is the excessive and unreasonable desire to avoid the feared stimulus. The combining form **-phobia** is in common use, there are specialized dictionaries and lists of phobias.
7. The combining forms **-mania** means an «abnormal compulsion or an extreme love for» (e.g., *pyromania* - uncontrollable impulse to start fires). It can be also used as a separate medical term “mania”, but its meaning is different: *it is a*

*state of abnormally elevated or irritable mood, arousal, and/or energy levels. In a sense, it is the opposite of depression.*

### **5.3 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS**

1. What does «necrosis» mean?.
2. What does «stenosis» mean?.
3. What does «stasis» mean?.
4. What does «sclerosis» mean?.
5. What does «spasm» mean?.
6. What does «phobia» mean?.
7. What does «mania» mean?.

### **5.4 HOMEWORK**

1. Learn the theoretical material of Lesson Five.
2. Learn the combining forms of this Lesson.
3. Practice Exercises No. 1, 3– orally, 2, 4 – in written form.

### **5.5 EXERCISES**

**Exercise 1.** *Divide the following terms into component parts and give the meaning of the entire term:*

anopsia, hyperosmia, macrocheilia, agalactia, cheilōsis, osteonecrōsis, gastrobiopsia, proctospasmus, hypermetropia, micropsia, dermatosclerōsis, dysphasia, bradyphasia, lymphostāsis, bradyphagia, hemiopia, adermia, phlebostenōsis, acrodermatītis, dysosmia, chromophobia, aphonia, onychophagia, kakosmia, dyschromatopsia, cheiloplastīca, megalomania, xanthochromia, galactostāsis, xanthoerythrodermia, hemispasmus, monoplegia, pyromania, nephroangiosclerosis, vasculitis

**Exercise 2.** *Construct medical terms with the following suffixes, give the meaning of the medical terms:*

- 1.–opia/-opsia (my-, poly-, a-, hemi-, hypermetr-)
- 2.–phagia (dys-, a-, tachy-, brady-, onycho-, cheilo-, poly-, trich-)
- 3.–necrōsis (osteo-, myo-, nephro-, pancreo-, chondro-)
- 4.–stenōsis (broncho-, laryngo-, pyloro-, tracheo-, phlebo-)
- 5.–sclerōsis (acro-, angio-, cardio-, myo-, nephro-, phaco-, phlebo-)
- 6.–phobia (claustro-, acro-, hydro-, chromo-, nycto-, clepto-, grapho-, pan-).

**Exercise 3. Write these English medical terms in Latin, give the meaning of these terms:**

hyposmia, graphomania, dysphonia, tachyphagia, hemiplegia, angiospasm, microphonia, acheilia, polyopia, aphasia, enterobiopsy, enterospasm, achromatopsia, chondronecrosis, galactorrhea, claustromania, nephrosclerosis, onychocheilophagia, xanthopsia, cholestasis, micromania, dermatosis, myopia, cardiosclerosis, proctostasis, macropsia, aphagia, acheilia, oligophasia, rhinophonia, gastrosplasm, hormonopoiesis, pyrophobia

**Exercise 4. Build the following medical terms:**

- 1) lack of the sense of smell;
- 2) inflammation of the lips;
- 3) voice impairment;
- 4) marked weakness of voice;
- 5) condition in which all objects appear of a yellow colour;
- 6) destruction or death of kidney tissue;
- 7) difficulty in swallowing
- 8) hardening of muscle tissue;
- 9) removal and examination of a sample of duodenum tissue ;
- 10) spasmodic contraction of the walls of a blood vessel;
- 11) spontaneous flow of milk from the nipple;
- 12) stoppage of the flow or discharge of urine;
- 13) any purulent skin disease;
- 14) abnormally low milk secretion;
- 15) irrational fear of the color red;
- 16) absence of the lens of an eye;
- 17) abnormal slowness in speech;
- 18) abnormal narrowing of the lumen of the trachea.

## **5.6 ADDITIONAL EXERCISES: REVIEW**

**Exercise 1. Divide the following terms into component parts and give the meaning of the entire term:**

arthralgia, bradycardia, gastroenteritis, cholecystopexia, onychophagia, thrombocytosis, adenolipoma, blepharoplastica, haematemesis, splenorrhaphia, mastalgia, arthrosis, heminephrectomia, nephroscopia, hepatosplenomegalia, macrodontia, gastrographia, tenotomia, pyuria, angiopathia, hysterographia, acystia, phlebogramma, cystoscopia, abscessotomia, leucopenia, cheilosis,

polydipsia, haematophobia, nephrotomia, hepatocholecystostomia, laparocentēsis, urolithus, paraproctītis, spondylodēsis, cardiorrhēxis, ablepharia, omentonephropexia, polysplenia, periduodenītis, endosalpingītis, cheiloplastīca, tachycardia, lymphadenītis, cystolithiāsis, osteochondrōsis, monocytopoēsis, acropathia

**Exercise 2. *Build the following medical terms:***

- 1) surgical removal of the uterus;
- 2) surgical fixation of a mobile kidney;
- 3) muscular pain;
- 4) excision of part (half) of a kidney;
- 5) hemorrhage from the stomach;
- 6) inflammation of the duodenum;
- 7) excessive production of urine;
- 8) inflammation of several joints;
- 9) radiography of the blood vessels;
- 10) incision of the lung;
- 11) visual examination of the pelvis and the calices of the kidney;
- 12) inflammation of an artery;
- 13) abnormal smallness of the stomach;
- 14) inflammation of the tissues around the uterus;
- 15) surgical removal of the large bowel;
- 16) benign tumor of muscular tissue;
- 17) increased amounts of lipids in the blood;
- 18) presence of calculi in the urinary system.

**Combining Forms  
Denoting  
Methods of  
Treatment,  
Medical Sciences**

**Lesson  
6**

<b>gynaec(o)-</b> (Eng.: <i>gynec-</i> )	woman	<i>Gynecology</i>
<b>irid(o)-</b>	iris of the eye	<i>iridocele</i>
<b>miso-</b>	abnormal dislike	<i>misopedia</i>
<b>oxy-</b>	oxygen	<i>oxybarotherapy</i>
<b>paed-</b> (Eng.: <i>ped-</i> )	child, children	<i>pediatrics</i>
<b>phthisi(o)-</b>	tuberculosis	<i>phthisiology</i>
<b>pseud(o)-</b>	false	<i>pseudoarthrosis</i>
<b>psych(o)-</b>	mental, mind	<i>Psychiatry</i>
<b>splanchn(o)-</b>	viscera, visceral	<i>splanchnopexy</i>
<b>thalass(o)-</b>	sea	<i>thalassotherapy</i>

### Suffixes:

<b>Combining form</b>	<b>Meaning</b>	<b>Examples</b>
<b>-cēle</b>	hernia, hernial protrusion	<i>hepatocele</i>
<b>-iatria</b> (Eng.: - <i>iatry, -iatics</i> )	medical treatment, branch of medicine	<i>Psychiatry</i>
<b>-logia</b> (Eng.: <i>-logy</i> )	science, study of	<i>Urology</i>
<b>-paedia</b> (Eng.: <i>-pedia,</i> <i>-paedics</i> )	1) child, children 2) education, knowledge	<i>misopedia</i> <i>logopedia</i>
<b>-plasia</b> (Eng.: <i>-plasy</i> )	growth, development	<i>aplasy</i>
<b>-pnōë</b> (Eng.: <i>-pnea</i> )	breathing, respiration	<i>apnea</i>
<b>-ptōsis</b>	downward displacement, or prolapse of an organ	<i>nephroptosis</i>
<b>-therapia</b> (Eng.: <i>-thrapy</i> )	treatment	<i>apitherapy</i>
<b>-trophia</b> (Eng.: <i>-trophy</i> )	nutrition, growth	<i>dystrophy</i>

## 6.2 COMBINING FORMS DENOTING METHODS OF TREATMENT, MEDICAL SCIENCES

1. **-logia** is a combining form used in the names of sciences. In medical science the terms with this suffix denote various branches of medicine (e.g., *nephrology* - the branch of medical science that deals with the kidney, their functions and diseases, *pulmonology* - the branch of medicine that deals with diseases of the respiratory system). This combining form is stressed on the third syllable from the end (-lógia).
2. The combining form **-iatria**, as differentiated from **-therapia**, means not simply «medical treatment», but the branch of medicine dealing with this kind of medical treatment (e.g., *pediatria* - branch of medicine that deals with the medical care of children, *phoniatria* - medical science and treatment of organs involved with speech production).
3. Compare the meaning of the following terms: **Psychotherapy** — the treatment of disorders of the mind or personality by psychological or psychophysiological methods. **Psychiatry** — branch of medicine dealing with the study, treatment, and prevention of mental disorders.
4. The suffix **-paedia** has two meanings: the first meaning «child, children» is used relatively seldom (e.g., *misopaedia* - an abnormal dislike of children), the basic meaning of this combining form is «education, knowledge». It denotes usually a branch of medicine that deals with the «medical treatment and correction of disorders» (e.g., *logopaedia* specializes in speech disorders and language disorders (both in adults and children)).
5. The suffix **-plasia** means «growth, development». Most commonly the term *dysplasia* (abnormal development or growth of tissues, organs, or cells) is used. *Aplasia* is defined in general as "defective development or congenital absence of an organ or tissue".
6. The combining form **-ptōsis** can be used as a separate term: *ptosis* — drooping of the upper eyelid. As a part of a compound this combining form has a general meaning «downward displacement, or prolapse of any organ» (e.g., *nephroptosis* – downward displacement, prolapse of a kidney).
7. The combining form **-trophia** is derived from the Greek *trophē* – *nutrition* and means «nutrition, nourishment, growth» (e.g., *embryotrophy* – the nutrition of the embryo). Its basic meaning however is «abnormal development because of disorders of cell nutrition»:
  - **Atrophy** is a wasting or decrease in the size of an organ or tissue, as from death and reabsorption of cells, diminished cellular proliferation, pressure, ischemia, malnutrition, decreased function, or hormonal changes.
  - **Dystrophy** is any condition of abnormal development, often denoting the degeneration of muscles.
8. The suffix **-cēle** means «hernia, hernial protrusion». A **hernia** is the protrusion of an organ or the fascia of an organ through the wall of the cavity that normally

contains it (e.g., *rectocele* - hernial protrusion of part of the rectum into the vagina).

9. The combining form **–pnōē** means «breathing, respiration», commonly «abnormal breathing», e.g., *dyspnōē* – *breathlessness* (a distressful subjective sensation of uncomfortable breathing that may be caused by many disorders, including certain heart and respiratory conditions, strenuous exercise, or anxiety).
10. Widely spread in the clinical medicine are the medical terms formed after a model «name of fluid or gas + name of an organ». Such terms commonly mean «accumulation of fluid or gas in an organ or in a cavity», e.g., *pneumothorax* – accumulation of air or gas in the pleural cavity, *pyosalpinx* – collection of pus in a uterine tube.

### 6.3 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. What does the combining form *–logia* mean? How is this combining form stressed?
2. What is the difference between *–iatria* and *–therapia*?
3. Define the contents «Psychiatry» and «Psychotherapy».
4. Explain the usage of combining form *–paedia*.
5. Give the meaning of the medical terms «dysplasia», «hypoplasia» and «aplasia».
6. What does *ptosis* mean?
7. Define the contents «Dystrophy» and «Atrophy».
8. What does *hernia* mean?
9. What does *dyspnea* mean?
10. What does the model «name of fluid or gas + name of an organ» mean?

### 6.4 HOMEWORK

4. Learn the theoretical material of Lesson Six.
5. Learn the combining forms of this Lesson.
6. Practice Exercises No. 1, 3– orally, 2, 4 – in written form.

### 6.5 EXERCISES

**Exercise 1.** *Divide the following terms into component parts and give the meaning of the entire term:*

pyosalpinx, ophthalmoplegia, thalassotherapy, hyperplasia, glossoptōsis, haemopericardium, pseudoptōsis, craniodysplasia, mastocēle, apnōē, eutrophia, hepatoptōsis, apiphobia, nephroptōsis, hypertrophia, haemophthalmia, iridectomy, dysplasia, cystocēle, psichiatria, amyotrophia, pseudostenōsis, paedopsychiatria, bradypnōē, onychatrophia, phoniatria, hydrothōrax, osteochondrodysplasia, coloptōsis, galactocēle, hydrocephalia, hemiatrophia, herniologia, cephalocele, haematometra, myelocele, pneumothorax

**Exercise 2. Write these English medical terms in Latin, give the meaning of these terms:**

pediatrics, hypoplasia, mastoptosis, atrophy, hysterocele, phthisiology, dyspnea, hysteroptosis, osteodysplasia, dystrophy, hyperpnea, aniridia, splanchnoptosis, hypotrophy, chondrodysplasia, typhloptosis, gastrocele, oligopnea, myodystrophia, megaloplasia, pseudoarthritis, phthisiophobia, iridocele, gastrojejunosomia, hemopneumothorax, hemihypertrophy, proctocolectomy, pyrometry

**Exercise 3. Give the meaning of the following branches of medicine, use the dictionary:**

allergologia, dermatologia, anaesthesiologia, gastroenterologia, narcologia, hematologia, gerontologia, gynaecologia, cardiologia, proctologia, neuropathologia, nephrologia, oncologia, ophthalmology, herniologia, otorhinolaryngologia, pathologia, psychopathologia, pulmonologia, thanatologia, urologia, phlebologia, angiologia, arthrologia, hepatologia, teratologia

**Exercise 4. Write these English medical terms in Latin, give the meaning of these terms, use the dictionary:**

climatotherapy, hormonotherapy, dietotherapy, mechanotherapy, chemotherapy, magnetotherapy, radiotherapy, thermotherapy, physiotherapy, musicotherapy, pharmacotherapy, psychotherapy, vitaminotherapy, hemotherapy, hirudotherapy, pyrotherapy

**Exercise 5. Build the following medical terms:**

- 1) radiographic examination of the liver
- 2) defective development resulting in the absence of all or part of an organ or tissue;
- 3) downward displacement of the stomach;
- 4) protrusion of part of the brain through the skull;
- 5) branch of medicine dealing with care, treatment, and study of tuberculosis of the lung;
- 6) very rapid respiration;
- 7) abnormal fear of the sea;

- 8) hernial protrusion of part of the iris through the cornea;
- 9) false nearsightedness;
- 10) treatment of mental disorders by psychological methods;
- 11) abnormal downward displacement of the diaphragm;
- 12) hernial protrusion of part of the rectum;
- 13) incision of the iris;
- 14) fear of tuberculosis;
- 15) abnormal increase in depth and rate of respiration;
- 16) treatment of disease by chemical agents;
- 17) incomplete development or underdevelopment of an organ or tissue;
- 18) absence of pain;
- 19) abnormal fear of heart disease;
- 20) accumulation of watery fluid in the pericardial cavity

## 6.6 ADDITIONAL EXERCISES: REVIEW

**Exercise 1.** *Divide the following terms into component parts and give the meaning of the entire term:*

enterobiopsia, amnioscopia, spondylodēsis, ablepharia, laparocentēsis, hepatocholecystoenterostomia, angiocholecystītis, aphasia, rhinophonia, typhlatonia, pancreonecrōsis, parapleuritis, hepatorrhaphia, endometrītis, mesotympanītis, pericholecystītis, microglossia, adenomatōsis, enterolīthus, omentonephropexia, chromophobia, nephropexia, aphakia, macroglossia, hypogalactia, pharyngotomia, nephrographia, glucosuria, polyarthralgia, kakosmia, myopia, cardiorrhēxis, spondyloarthrītis, onychophagia, adenolipomatōsis, claustromania, hepatosplenomegalia, oligodipsia, haemophthalmus, arthrotomia, enteroproctostomia, arteriographia, patelloplastīca, pneumopathia, laparoscopia, oligopnōē, cardiomyopathia, narcomania, leucopathia, myocarditis, myelodysplasia, paranephritis, pyelogramma, pyorrhēa, rectocele

**Exercise 2.** *Build the following medical terms:*

- 1) inflammation of the stomach, small intestines, and colon;
- 2) presence of a urinary calculus in the bladder;
- 3) plastic surgery of the nose;
- 4) rapid or hasty eating;
- 5) creation of a permanent fistula leading into the kidney;
- 6) destruction or death of kidney tissue;
- 7) absence of the spleen;
- 8) narrowing of the lumen of a vein;

- 9) radiography of the uterine tubes;
- 10) abnormal collection of milk in the mammary glands;
- 11) abnormal decrease in the number of platelets in the blood;
- 12) constipation with stasis in the rectum;
- 13) excision of a vein;
- 14) spasmodic contraction of the walls of the stomach;
- 15) intense fear of bees;
- 16) abnormal largeness of the lips;
- 17) inflammation of the connective tissue around the pleura;
- 18) paralysis of the stomach;
- 19) surgical incision of the heart;
- 20) inflammation of tissues around the uterine tube

## SAMPLE OF THE FINAL TEST

### *I. Give the meaning of the combining forms as follows:*

- |                         |              |
|-------------------------|--------------|
| 1. paralysis            | 7. tongue    |
| 2. radiography          | 8. calculus  |
| 3. extreme, beyond norm | 9. lens      |
| 4. hemorrhage           | 10.narrowing |
| 5. renal pelvis         | 11.slow      |
| 6. abnormally small     | 12.fear of   |

### *II. Divide the following terms into component parts and give the meaning of the entire term:*

- |                     |                   |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. hyposialia       | 7. tachycardia    |
| 2. haemorrhagia     | 8. galactostāsis  |
| 3. cholecystopathia | 9. ablepharia     |
| 4. hyperthyreōsis   | 10.cardiorrhēxis  |
| 5. cleptomania      | 11.cystolithiāsis |
| 6. monoplegia       | 12.metrographia   |

### *III. Build the following medical terms:*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. pain in the breast   | 7. collection of pus in a uterine tube                       |
| 2. high blood pressure  | 8. bloody discharge from the rectum                          |
| 3. accumulation of serous fluid in one or both pleural cavities | 9. abnormal enlargement of the heart                         |
| 4. excessive vomiting   | 10.surgical puncture of the abdomen                          |
| 5. abnormal fear of water                                       | 11.hernial protrusion of part of the iris through the cornea |
| 6. anastomosis of the gallbladder and colon                     | 12.abnormal increase in depth and rate of respiration        |

# Latin-English Dictionary

## A

**ablepharia**

**abscessotomia**

**acardia**

**acephalia**

**acheilia**

**achromatopsia**

**acralgia**

**acrodermatītis**

**acromegalia**

**acropathia**

**acrophobia**

**acrosclerōsis**

**acystia**

**adenītis**

**adenocarcinōma**

**adenolipōma**

**adenolipomatōsis**

**adenōma**

**adenomatōsis**

**adenotomia**

**adermia**

**agalactia**

**agraphia**

**allergology**

- congenital absence of the eyelids
- incision of an abscess
- congenital absence of the heart
- congenital absence of the head
- congenital absence of the lips
- inability to distinguish any colors
- pain in the extremities
- inflammation of the skin of the extremities
- abnormal enlargement of limbs (acromegaly)
- any disease of limbs (acropathy)
- abnormal fear of heights
- stiffness and tightness of the skin of the extremities
- congenital absence of the urinary bladder
- inflammation of a gland
- malignant tumor derived from glandular tissue
- tumor composed of both glandular and fatty tissue elements
- condition marked by the development of multiple adenolipomas
- benign tumor of glandular epithelium
- development of multiple glandular tumors
- surgical incision of a gland (adenotomy)
- congenital absence of skin
- absence or failure of secretion of milk
- impairment or loss of the ability to write (agraphy)
- the branch of medical science that studies the causes and treatment of allergies (allergology)

**amastia**

**amniocentēsis**

**amniographia**

**amnionītis**

**amnioscopia**

**amniotomia**

**amyelia**

**amyotonia**

**amyotrophia**

**anaemia**

**anaesthesiologia**

**analgia**

**angialgia**

**angiītis**

**angiocardigramma**

**angiocardigraphia**

**angiocholecystītis**

**angiographia**

**angiologia**

**angiōma**

**angiopathia**

**angiorrhēxis**

**angiosclerosis**

- congenital absence of one or both mammary glands
- surgical puncture of the amniotic sac
- radiographic examination of the amnion (amniography)
- inflammation of the amnion
- examination of the amniotic cavity and fetus using an optical instrument (amnioscopy)
- surgical rupture of the fetal membranes (amniotomy)
- congenital absence of the spinal cord
- lack of muscular tonus
- progressive wasting of muscle tissues (amyotrophy)
- lack of blood
- branch of medicine concerned with the relief of pain and the administration of medication to relieve pain (anesthesiology)
- absence of pain
- pain in a blood vessel
- inflammation of a vessel
- film produced by the radiography of the heart and great vessels (angiocardio-gram)
- radiography of the heart and great vessels (angiocardiology)
- inflammation of the gallbladder and bile ducts
- radiography of the blood vessels (angiography)
- study of the vessels of the body (angiology)
- tumor composed chiefly of lymphatic vessels or blood vessels
- any disease of the vessels (angiopathy)
- rupture of a blood vessel
- thickening and hardening of the walls of the blood vessels

**angioscopia**

**angiospasmus**

**aniridia**

**anopia**

**anopsia**

**anosmia**

**anuria**

**aortītis**

**aortographia**

**apathia**

**aphagia**

**aphakia**

**aphasia**

**aphonia**

**apiphobia**

**apitherapia**

**aplasia**

**apneumia**

**apnõë**

**arteriītis**

**arteriographia**

**arthralgia**

**arthrectomia**

**arthrītis**

**arthrographia**

- visualization of blood vessels with a special microscope (angioscopy)
- spasmodic contraction of the walls of a blood vessel (angiospasm)
- congenital absence of the iris
- blindness resulting from a defect in or the absence of one or both eyes
- defect or loss of vision
- lack of the sense of smell
- absence of urine formation
- inflammation of the aorta
- radiography of the aorta after introduction into it of a contrast material (aortography)
- absence of emotions
- loss of the ability to swallow
- absence of the lens of an eye
- inability to speak or express oneself in words
- loss of voice
- intense fear of bees
- use of products produced by honeybees for therapeutic and pharmacologic purposes (apitherapy)
- defective development resulting in the absence of all or part of an organ or tissue
- congenital absence of the lungs
- temporary absence or cessation of breathing (apnea)
- inflammation of an artery
- radiography of an artery or arterial system after injection of a contrast medium (arteriography)
- pain in a joint
- surgical excision of a joint (arthrectomy)
- inflammation of a joint
- visual examination of a joint after injection of a contrast medium (arthrography)

<b>arthrologia</b>	• study of joints and ligaments (arthrology)
<b>arthropathia</b>	• any joint disease (arthropathy)
<b>arthroplastīca</b>	• plastic repair of a joint (arthroplasty)
<b>arthroscop</b>	• endoscope for examining the interior of a joint (arthroscope)
<b>arthroscopia</b>	• visual examination of the interior of a joint by means of an arthroscope (arthroscopy)
<b>arthrōsis</b>	• degenerative disease of a joint
<b>arthrotēnodēsis</b>	• surgical fixation of a joint and a tendon
<b>arthrotomia</b>	• incision of a joint (arthrotomy)
<b>asialia</b>	• lack of salivary flow
<b>asialorrhāea</b>	• lack of salivary flow (asialorrhoea)
<b>asplēnia</b>	• absence of the spleen
<b>atonia</b>	• absence or lack of normal tone
<b>atrophia</b>	• wasting or decrease in the size of an organ or tissue (atrophy)

## B

<b>bacteriaemia</b>	• bacteria in the blood
<b>bilirubinuria</b>	• presence of bilirubin in the urine
<b>biopsia</b>	• removal of a small piece of living tissue from an organ or other part of the body for microscopic examination
<b>blepharītis</b>	• inflammation of the eyelids
<b>blepharoplastīca</b>	• plastic surgery of the eyelids (blepharoplasty)
<b>blepharoplegia</b>	• paralysis of an eyelid
<b>blepharospasmus</b>	• spasm of the eyelid (blepharospasm)
<b>brachialgia</b>	• pain in the arm
<b>bradycardia</b>	• slowness of the heartbeat, usually under 60 beats per minute in adults
<b>bradyphagia</b>	• abnormal slowness of eating
<b>bradyphasia</b>	• abnormal slowness in speech
<b>bradypnōë</b>	• abnormally slow breathing rate (bradypnea)
<b>bronchītis</b>	• inflammation of one or more bronchi
<b>broncholithiāsis</b>	• presence of calculi in the bronchi

<b>bronchopathia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• any disease of the bronchi (bronchopathy)</li> </ul>
<b>bronchosopia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• examination of the bronchi through a bronchoscope (bronchoscopy)</li> </ul>
<b>bronchospasmus</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• bronchial spasm (bronchospasm)</li> </ul>
<b>bronchostenōsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• narrowing of a bronchus</li> </ul>
<b>bronchotomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• incision of a bronchus (bronchotomy)</li> </ul>
<b>C</b>	
<b>calciuria</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• presence of calcium in the urine</li> </ul>
<b>calorimetria</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• measurement of the amounts of heat radiated and absorbed</li> </ul>
<b>carcinōma</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• malignant tumor (cancer)</li> </ul>
<b>cardialgia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• heartburn</li> </ul>
<b>cardiogramma</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• curve traced by a cardiograph (cardiogram)</li> </ul>
<b>cardiologia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• medical study of the structure, function, and disorders of the heart (cardiology)</li> </ul>
<b>cardiomegalia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• abnormal enlargement of the heart (cardiomegaly)</li> </ul>
<b>cardiomyopathia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• any disease of the myocardium (cardiomyopathy)</li> </ul>
<b>cardiophobia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• abnormal fear of heart disease</li> </ul>
<b>cardiorrhēxis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• rupture of the heart</li> </ul>
<b>cardiosclerōsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• fibrous induration of the heart</li> </ul>
<b>cardiotomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical incision of the heart</li> </ul>
<b>cephalgia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• headache</li> </ul>
<b>cephalocēle</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• protrusion of part of the brain through the skull</li> </ul>
<b>cephalometria</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• measurement of the dimensions of the head (cephalometry)</li> </ul>
<b>cheilītis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of the lips</li> </ul>
<b>cheilophagia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• biting of the lips</li> </ul>
<b>cheiloplastica</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• plastic surgery of the lips (cheiloplasty)</li> </ul>
<b>cheilōsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• noninflammatory disorder of the lips</li> </ul>
<b>chimiotherapia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• treatment of disease by chemical agents (chemotherapy)</li> </ul>
<b>cholaemia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• bile or bile pigment in the blood</li> </ul>
<b>cholecystectomy</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical removal of the gallbladder (cholecystectomy)</li> </ul>

<b>cholecystitis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of the gallbladder</li> </ul>
<b>cholecystocolostomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• anastomosis of the gallbladder and colon (cholecystocolostomy)</li> </ul>
<b>cholecystographia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• radiography of the gallbladder (cholecystography)</li> </ul>
<b>cholecystopathia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• any disease of the gallbladder (cholecystopathy)</li> </ul>
<b>cholecystopexia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical fixation of the gallbladder (cholecystopexy)</li> </ul>
<b>cholecystorrhaphia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• suture or repair of the gallbladder (cholecystorrhaphy)</li> </ul>
<b>cholecystostomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• establishment of a fistula into the gallbladder (cholecystostomy)</li> </ul>
<b>cholecystotomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• incision of the gallbladder (cholecystotomy)</li> </ul>
<b>cholelithiāsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• presence or formation of gallstones in the gallbladder or bile ducts</li> </ul>
<b>cholestāsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• stoppage or suppression of bile flow</li> </ul>
<b>chondrodysplasia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• abnormal growth of cartilage</li> </ul>
<b>chondrōma</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• benign tumor of cartilage</li> </ul>
<b>chondronecrōsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• destruction or death of cartilage tissue</li> </ul>
<b>chromophobia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• abnormal fear of colors</li> </ul>
<b>claustromania</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• abnormal desire to be closed in, to shut all windows and doors</li> </ul>
<b>claustrophobia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• abnormal fear of enclosed spaces</li> </ul>
<b>cleptomania</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• obsessive impulse to steal regardless of economic need</li> </ul>
<b>cleptophobia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• abnormal fear of thieves or of loss through thievery</li> </ul>
<b>climatotherapia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• treatment of disease by means of a favorable climate (climatotherapy)</li> </ul>
<b>colectomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical removal of the large bowel (colectomy)</li> </ul>
<b>colitis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of the colon</li> </ul>
<b>colonoscopia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• endoscopic examination of the colon</li> </ul>
<b>colopexia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical fixation of the colon (colopexy)</li> </ul>
<b>coloplastica</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• plastic surgery of the colon (coloplasty)</li> </ul>
<b>coloproctectomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical removal of the colon and rectum (coloproctectomy)</li> </ul>

<b>coloptōsis</b>	• prolapse or downward displacement of the colon
<b>colotomia</b>	• incision of the colon
<b>colpītis</b>	• inflammation of the vagina
<b>colpopexia</b>	• suture of a relaxed vagina to the abdominal wall (colpopexy)
<b>colporrhaphia</b>	• suture of the vagina (colporrhaphy)
<b>colporrhēxis</b>	• laceration of the vagina
<b>colpotomia</b>	• incision of the vagina (colpotomy)
<b>craniocele</b>	• protrusion of part of the brain through the skull
<b>craniodysplasia</b>	• abnormal development of skull
<b>craniographia</b>	• representing, by drawings made from measurements, the configuration of the skull (craniography)
<b>cranioplastīca</b>	• plastic surgery performed on the skull (cranioplasty)
<b>cystalgia</b>	• pain in the bladder
<b>cystocēle</b>	• hernia of the urinary bladder
<b>cystocoloplastīca</b>	• plastic repair of the bladder and the colon (cystocoloplasty)
<b>cystogramma</b>	• film obtained by cystography (cystogram)
<b>cystographia</b>	• radiography of the urinary bladder (cystography)
<b>cystolithiāsis</b>	• presence of a urinary calculus in the bladder
<b>cystometria</b>	• test of bladder function in which pressure and volume of fluid in the bladder is measured (cystometry)
<b>cystoplastīca</b>	• surgical repair of a defect in the urinary bladder (cystoplasty)
<b>cystoscop</b>	• endoscope used to examine the interior of the urinary bladder and ureter (cystoscope)
<b>cystoscopia</b>	• visual examination of the urinary tract with an endoscope (cystoscopy)
<b>cystostomia</b>	• surgically-created connection between the urinary bladder and the skin (cystostomy)

<b>cystotomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical incision of the urinary bladder (cystotomy)</li> </ul>
<b>D</b>	
<b>dermatologia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• branch of medicine that deals with the diagnosis and treatment of skin diseases (dermatology)</li> </ul>
<b>dermatosclerosis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• abnormal hardening of the skin</li> </ul>
<b>dermatosis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• any noninflammatory skin disease</li> </ul>
<b>dietotherapia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• scientific regulation of diet in treating disease (dietotherapy)</li> </ul>
<b>diplegia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• paralysis of corresponding parts on both sides of the body</li> </ul>
<b>dipsomania</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• compulsive desire to drink alcoholic beverages</li> </ul>
<b>duodenectomy</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• excision of the duodenum (duodenectomy)</li> </ul>
<b>duodenitis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of the duodenum</li> </ul>
<b>duodenobiopsia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• removal and examination of a sample of duodenum tissue (duodenobiopsy)</li> <li>•</li> </ul>
<b>duodenoscopia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• visual examination of the duodenum by means of an endoscope (duodenoscopy)</li> </ul>
<b>duodenostomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical formation of a permanent opening into the duodenum (duodenostomy)</li> </ul>
<b>dyschromatopsia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• disorder of color vision</li> </ul>
<b>dysgraphia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• impairment of the ability to write</li> </ul>
<b>dysosmia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• impairment or dysfunction of the sense of smell</li> </ul>
<b>dysphagia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• difficulty in swallowing</li> </ul>
<b>dysphasia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• impairment of speech and verbal comprehension</li> </ul>
<b>dysphonia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• voice impairment</li> </ul>
<b>dysplasia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• abnormal development or growth of tissues, organs, or cells</li> </ul>
<b>dyspnöë</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• difficulty in breathing or shortness of breath, typically associated with some form of heart or lung disease (dyspnea)</li> </ul>
<b>dystonia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• any impairment of muscle tone</li> </ul>

<b>dystrophia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• degenerative disorder caused by inadequate or defective nutrition (dystrophy)</li> </ul>
<b>dysuria</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• impairment of urination</li> </ul>
<b>E</b>	
<b>electroencephalogramma</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• tracing of the electric impulses of the brain</li> </ul>
<b>electroencephalographia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• recording of the electrical activity of the brain (electroencephalography)</li> </ul>
<b>encephalopathia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• any degenerative brain disease (encephalopathy)</li> </ul>
<b>endaortītis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of the inner layer of the aorta</li> </ul>
<b>endarterītis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of the inner layer of arteries</li> </ul>
<b>endometrītis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of the endometrium or mucous membrane of the uterus</li> </ul>
<b>endophlebītis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of the intima of a vein</li> </ul>
<b>endophthalmītis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of the internal structures of the tissues in the eyeball</li> </ul>
<b>endosalpingitis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of the mucous membrane lining the eustachian or fallopian tube</li> </ul>
<b>endoscopia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• visual examination of interior structures of the body with an endoscope (endoscopy)</li> </ul>
<b>enophthalmitis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of the internal structures of the tissues in the eyeball</li> </ul>
<b>enterītis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of the intestine</li> </ul>
<b>enterobiopsia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• removal and examination of a sample of intestine tissue (enterobiopsy)</li> </ul>
<b>enterocolītis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of the small intestine and colon</li> </ul>
<b>enterolīthus</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• intestinal calculus (enterolith)</li> </ul>
<b>enteropathia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• any disease of the intestine (enteropathy)</li> </ul>
<b>enteroproctostomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical construction of an opening between the intestine and the rectum</li> </ul>
<b>enterorrhaphia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical suture of the intestine (enterorrhaphy)</li> </ul>
<b>enteroscopia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• visualization of the small bowel using a fiber optic endoscope (enteroscopy)</li> </ul>

<b>enterospasmus</b>	• intestinal spasm (enterospasm)
<b>enterostomia</b>	• surgical construction of an opening into the intestine (enterostomy)
<b>enterotomia</b>	• incision of the intestine (enterotomy)
<b>erythrocytopenia</b>	• efficiency or decrease in number of erythrocytes
<b>erythrocytōsis</b>	• increased production of red blood cells
<b>erythrodermia</b>	• red coloration of the skin
<b>erythrophobia</b>	• irrational fear of the color red
<b>erythropsia</b>	• vision abnormality in which all objects appear reddish
<b>eukapnia</b>	• normal carbon dioxide tension of the blood (eucapnia)
<b>eutrophia</b>	• state of normal nourishment and growth
<b>G</b>	
<b>galactocēle</b>	• milk-containing, cystic enlargement of the mammary gland
<b>galactorrhoea</b>	• spontaneous flow of milk from the nipple (galactorrhea)
<b>galactostāsis</b>	• abnormal collection of milk in the mammary glands
<b>gastralgia</b>	• pain in the stomach
<b>gastrectomia</b>	• excision of the stomach (gastrectomy)
<b>gastrītis</b>	• inflammation of the stomach
<b>gastrobiopsia</b>	• removal and examination of a sample of tissue from the stomach
<b>gastrocēle</b>	• hernial protrusion of the stomach
<b>gastroduodenoscopia</b>	• endoscopic examination of the stomach and duodenum (gastroduodenoscopy)
<b>gastroduodenostomia</b>	• surgical formation of a communication between the stomach and the duodenum (gastroduodenostomy)
<b>gastroenterītis</b>	• inflammation of the stomach and intestine
<b>gastroenterocolītis</b>	• inflammation of the stomach, small intestines, and colon
<b>gastroenterologia</b>	• study of the stomach and intestine and their diseases (gastroenterology)

<b>gastroenterostomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical creation of a connection between the stomach and the jejunum (gastroenterostomy)</li> </ul>
<b>gastrographia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• contrast radiography of the stomach</li> </ul>
<b>gastrojejunostomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical creation of an anastomosis between the stomach and jejunum (gastrojejunostomy)</li> </ul>
<b>gastropathia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• any disease of the stomach (gastropathy)</li> </ul>
<b>gastropexia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical fixation of the stomach (gastropexy)</li> </ul>
<b>gastroplastīca</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• plastic repair of the stomach (gastroplasty)</li> </ul>
<b>gastroplegia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• paralysis of the stomach</li> </ul>
<b>gastroptōsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• downward displacement of the stomach</li> </ul>
<b>gastrorrhagia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• hemorrhage from the stomach</li> </ul>
<b>gastroscopeia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• visual inspection of the interior of the stomach with a gastroscope (gastroscopy)</li> </ul>
<b>gastrospasmus</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• spasmodic contraction of the walls of the stomach (gastrospasm)</li> </ul>
<b>gastrostomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical creation of an artificial opening into the stomach (gastrostomy)</li> </ul>
<b>gerontologia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• scientific study of aging in all its aspects (gerontology)</li> </ul>
<b>glossalgia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• pain in the tongue</li> </ul>
<b>glossītis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of the tongue</li> </ul>
<b>glossoptōsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• downward displacement of the tongue</li> </ul>
<b>glucosuria</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• presence of glucose in the urine</li> </ul>
<b>graphomania</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• obsession with writing</li> </ul>
<b>graphophobia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• dislike for writing</li> </ul>
<b>gynaecologia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• branch of medical science that studies the diseases of women (gynecology)</li> </ul>
<b>H</b>	
<b>haemangioendotheliōma</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• neoplasm derived from blood vessels</li> </ul>
<b>haemangiōma</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• benign tumor composed of abnormal blood vessels</li> </ul>
<b>haemangiomatōsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• presence of multiple hemangiomas</li> </ul>
<b>haematemēsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• vomiting of blood</li> </ul>

<b>haematologia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• branch of medical science dealing with the blood and blood-forming tissues (hematology)</li> </ul>
<b>haematometra</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accumulation of blood in the uterine cavity</li> </ul>
<b>haematophobia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• abnormal fear of the sight of blood</li> </ul>
<b>haematuria</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• blood in the urine</li> </ul>
<b>haemogramma</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• complete detailed examination of the blood (hemogram)</li> </ul>
<b>haemopericardium</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accumulation of blood within the pericardial sac</li> </ul>
<b>haemophthalmia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• effusion of blood into the eyeball</li> </ul>
<b>haemopneumothorax</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accumulation of air and blood in the pleural cavity</li> </ul>
<b>haemopoësis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• formation of blood cells (hemopoiesis)</li> </ul>
<b>haemorrhagia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• bleeding, haemorrhage</li> </ul>
<b>haemotherapia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• treatment of disease by the use of blood or blood derivatives (hemotherapy)</li> </ul>
<b>hemiatrophia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• atrophy of one side of a body part or organ (hemiatrophy)</li> </ul>
<b>hemihepatectomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• excision of one half of the liver (hemihepatectomy)</li> </ul>
<b>hemihypertrophia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• overgrowth of one side of the body or of a part (hemihypertrophy)</li> </ul>
<b>hemilaryngectomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• excision of one lateral half of the larynx (hemilaryngectomy)</li> </ul>
<b>heminephrectomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• excision of part (half) of a kidney (heminephrectomy)</li> </ul>
<b>hemiopia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• blindness in half of the visual field</li> </ul>
<b>hemiplegia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• paralysis of one side of the body</li> </ul>
<b>hemispasmus</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• spasm affecting only one side (hemispasm)</li> </ul>
<b>haemopoesis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• formation of blood or blood cells</li> </ul>
<b>hepatalgia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• pain in the liver</li> </ul>
<b>hepatītis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of the liver</li> </ul>
<b>hepatocele</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• hernial protrusion of part of the liver through the abdominal wall</li> </ul>
<b>hepatocholecystoenterostomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• establishment of a fistula between the liver, gallbladder and intestine (hepatocholecystoenterostomy)</li> </ul>

<b>hepatocholecystogastrostomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• establishment of a fistula between the liver, gallbladder and stomach (hepatocholecystogastrostomy)</li> </ul>
<b>hepatocholecystostomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• establishment of a fistula between the liver and the gallbladder (hepatocholecystostomy)</li> </ul>
<b>hepatographia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• radiographic examination of the liver (hepatography)</li> </ul>
<b>hepatolithiāsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• presence of calculi in the liver</li> </ul>
<b>hepatology</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• branch of medical science concerned with the liver and its diseases (hepatology)</li> </ul>
<b>hepatōma</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• tumor of the liver</li> </ul>
<b>hepatomegalia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• abnormal enlargement of the liver (hepatomegaly)</li> </ul>
<b>hepatoomentophrenopexia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical fixation of a displaced omentum to the liver and diaphragm (hepatoomentophrenopexy)</li> </ul>
<b>hepatopathia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• any disease of the liver (hepatopathy)</li> </ul>
<b>hepatopexia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical fixation of a displaced liver (hepatopexy)</li> </ul>
<b>hepatoptōsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• downward displacement of the liver</li> </ul>
<b>hepatorrhaphia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• suture of the liver (hepatorrhaphy)</li> </ul>
<b>hepatōsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• any functional disorder of the liver</li> </ul>
<b>hepatosplenomegalia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• enlargement of the liver and the spleen (hepatosplenomegaly)</li> </ul>
<b>hepatotomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• incision of the liver (hepatotomy)</li> </ul>
<b>herniography</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• radiographic examination of a hernia (herniography)</li> </ul>
<b>herniologia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• study of hernia (herniology)</li> </ul>
<b>herniorrhaphia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical repair of a hernia (herniorrhaphy)</li> </ul>
<b>hidradenītis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of the sweat glands</li> </ul>
<b>hidradenōma</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• benign tumor derived from epithelial cells of sweat glands</li> </ul>
<b>hirudotherapy</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• application of medicinal leeches (hirudotherapy)</li> </ul>
<b>hormonopoēsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• production of hormones (hormonopoiesis)</li> </ul>

**hormonotherapia**

**hydraemia**

**hydrocephalia**

**hydropericardium**

**hydrophobia**

**hydrothōrax**

**hypalgia**

**hyperaemia**

**hypercalcaemia**

**hyperemēsis**

**hyperlipaemia**

**hypermetropia**

**hyperosmia**

**hyperpathia**

**hyperplasia**

**hyperpnōë**

**hypertensio**

**hyperthyreōsis**

**hypertonia**

**hypertrophia**

**hypocholesterinaemia**

**hypodontia**

**hypogalactia**

**hypoplasia**

**hyposialia**

- treatment by the use of hormones (hormonotherapy)
- excess of water in the blood
- abnormal accumulation of fluid in the brain
- accumulation of watery fluid in the pericardial cavity
- abnormal fear of water
- accumulation of serous fluid in one or both pleural cavities
- decreased sensibility to pain
- increase in the quantity of blood flow to a body part
- abnormally high level of calcium in the blood
- excessive vomiting
- excess of lipids in the blood
- farsightedness
- abnormally acute sense of smell
- increased level of sensibility (to pain)
- abnormal increase in volume of a tissue or organ caused by the formation and growth of new normal cells
- abnormal increase in depth and rate of respiration (hyperpnea)
- high blood pressure (hypertension)
- excessive functional activity of the thyroid gland (hyperthyroidism)
- excessive tone of the skeletal muscles
- excessive growth of tissue or of an organ, independent of and out of proportion to the rest of the body (hypertrophy)
- low level of cholesterol in the blood
- condition at which the patient has missing several teeth
- abnormally low milk secretion
- incomplete development or underdevelopment of an organ or tissue
- decreased salivary flow (hyposalivation)

<b>hyposmia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• diminished sense of smell</li> </ul>
<b>hypothyreōsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• insufficient production of thyroid hormones (hypothyroism)</li> </ul>
<b>hypotonia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• diminished tone of the skeletal muscles</li> </ul>
<b>hypotrophy</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• progressive degeneration of an organ or tissue caused by loss of cells (hypotrophy)</li> </ul>
<b>hysterectomy</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical removal of the uterus</li> </ul>
<b>hysterocele</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• hernia of the uterus</li> </ul>
<b>hystero-graphia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• roentgenologic examination of the uterus after the introduction of a contrast medium (hystero-graphy)</li> </ul>
<b>hystero-pexia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical fixation of a displaced uterus (hystero-pexy)</li> </ul>
<b>hystero-ptōsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• prolapse of the uterus</li> </ul>
<b>hystero-rrhaphia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• suture of the uterus (hystero-rrhaphy)</li> </ul>
<b>hystero-rrhēxis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• rupture of the uterus</li> </ul>
<b>hystero-scopia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• visual inspection of the uterine cavity with an endoscope</li> </ul>
<b>hystero-tomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• incision of the uterus (hystero-tomy)</li> </ul>
<b>I</b>	
<b>iridectomy</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical removal of part of the iris of the eye (iridectomy)</li> </ul>
<b>iridocēle</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• hernial protrusion of part of the iris through the cornea</li> </ul>
<b>iridotomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• incision of the iris (iridotomy)</li> </ul>
<b>K</b>	
<b>kakosmia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• perception of unpleasant odors, when non exists</li> </ul>
<b>keratītis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of the cornea</li> </ul>
<b>keratoplastīca</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• plastic surgery of the cornea (keratoplasty)</li> </ul>
<b>keratotomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• incision of the cornea (keratotomy)</li> </ul>
<b>L</b>	
<b>laparocentēsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical puncture of the abdomen (abdominocentesis)</li> </ul>
<b>laparohaemorrhagia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• abdominal haemorrhage</li> </ul>

<b>laparometria</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• measurements of the abdominal circumference</li> </ul>
<b>laparoscopy</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• examination of the interior of the abdomen by a laparoscope (laparoscopy)</li> </ul>
<b>laparotomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical incision into the abdominal cavity (laparotomy)</li> </ul>
<b>laryngītis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of the larynx</li> </ul>
<b>laryngoscopia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• examination of the larynx by means of a laryngoscope (laryngoscopy)</li> </ul>
<b>laryngostenōsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• narrowing or stricture of the larynx</li> </ul>
<b>leucocytōsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• elevated number of white cells in the blood</li> </ul>
<b>leucocyturia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• presence of white blood cells in the urine</li> </ul>
<b>leucopathia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• any disease of the leukocytes</li> </ul>
<b>leucopenia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• abnormally low number of white blood cells in the circulating blood</li> </ul>
<b>leucopoēsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• production of leukocytes</li> </ul>
<b>leucōsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• abnormal increase in the number of white blood cells (leukemia)</li> </ul>
<b>leukaemia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• see <i>leucōsis</i></li> </ul>
<b>lipaemia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• increased amounts of lipids in the blood</li> </ul>
<b>lipōma</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• benign tumor of fatty tissue</li> </ul>
<b>lipuria</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• lipids in the urine</li> </ul>
<b>logopaedia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• medical science that studies speech defects and their treatment</li> </ul>
<b>lymphadenītis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of a lymph node</li> </ul>
<b>lymphadenographia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• radiography of lymph nodes (lymphadenography)</li> </ul>
<b>lymphadenōma</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• tumor of the lymph nodes</li> </ul>
<b>lymphangiītis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of the lymph vessels</li> </ul>
<b>lymphocytōsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• abnormally high lymphocyte count in the blood</li> </ul>
<b>lymphopenia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• reduction in the number of lymphocytes in the blood</li> </ul>
<b>lymphorrhoea</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• flow of lymph from cut or ruptured lymph vessels</li> </ul>
<b>lymphostāsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• stoppage of lymph flow</li> </ul>
<b>M</b>	
<b>macrocardia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• abnormal enlargement of the heart</li> </ul>

<b>macrocephalia</b>	• abnormal largeness of the head
<b>macrocheilia</b>	• abnormal largeness of the lips
<b>macrodontia</b>	• abnormally large teeth
<b>macroencephalia</b>	• congenital anomaly characterized by abnormal largeness of the brain
<b>macroglossia</b>	• abnormally enlarged tongue
<b>macrographia</b>	• abnormally large handwriting
<b>macromastia</b>	• abnormally enlarged breasts
<b>macropsia</b>	• visual disorder in which objects appear larger than their actual size
<b>magnitotherapia</b>	• therapeutic application of magnetic fields (magnetotherapy)
<b>mastalgia</b>	• pain in the breast
<b>mastectomy</b>	• surgical removal of the breast (mastectomy)
<b>mastītis</b>	• inflammation of the mammary gland
<b>mastocēle</b>	• protrusion of mam mary gland
<b>mastodynia</b>	• pain in the breast
<b>mastographia</b>	• radiography of the mammary gland (mastography)
<b>mastopathia</b>	• any disease of the mammary gland (mastopathy)
<b>masto-ptōsis</b>	• pendulous breasts
<b>mechanotherapia</b>	• use of mechanical apparatus in treatment of disease (mechanotherapy)
<b>megalographia</b>	• writing with very large letters
<b>megalomania</b>	• mental illness characterized by delusions of grandeur, power, wealth
<b>megaloplasia</b>	• abnormal development of a tissue or an organ
<b>mesaortītis</b>	• inflammation of the middle layer of the aorta
<b>mesarteriītis</b>	• inflammation of the middle layer of an artery
<b>mesopharyngītis</b>	• inflammation of the middle part of the pharynx
<b>mesotympanītis</b>	• inflammation of the middle ear
<b>metrographia</b>	• roentgenologic examination of the uterus (metrography)
<b>metroptōsis</b>	• prolapse of the uterus

<b>metrorrhagia</b>	• uterine bleeding
<b>microangiopathia</b>	• any lesions in small blood vessels (microangiopathy)
<b>microcephalia</b>	• abnormally small head
<b>microgastria</b>	• abnormal smallness of the stomach
<b>microglossia</b>	• abnormally small tongue
<b>micrographia</b>	• abnormally small, cramped handwriting
<b>micromania</b>	• delusion of self-depreciation
<b>micromastia</b>	• abnormal smallness of the mammary gland
<b>micronychia</b>	• abnormal smallness of the fingernails or toenails
<b>microphonia</b>	• marked weakness of voice
<b>microphthalmus</b>	• abnormally small eyeball
<b>micropsia</b>	• visual disorder in which objects appear smaller than their actual size
<b>misopaedia</b>	• abnormal dislike of children
<b>monocytopenia</b>	• abnormally low number of monocytes in the blood
<b>monocytopoësis</b>	• production of monocytes
<b>monophobia</b>	• strong fear of being alone
<b>monoplegia</b>	• paralysis of a single part
<b>musicotherapia</b>	• treatment of mental disorders by means of music (musicotherapy)
<b>myalgia</b>	• muscular pain
<b>myatonia</b>	• lack of muscular tonus
<b>myectomy</b>	• excision of a muscle (myectomy)
<b>myelītis</b>	• inflammation of the spinal cord or of the bone marrow
<b>myelocēle</b>	• protrusion of the spinal cord
<b>myelodysplasia</b>	• abnormal spinal cord development
<b>myelographia</b>	• radiography of the spinal cord (myelography)
<b>myelopathia</b>	• any disease of the spinal cord (myelopathy)
<b>myocarditis</b>	• inflammation of the heart muscle
<b>myodystrophia</b>	• dystrophic changes of muscular tissue (myodystrophy)

<p><b>myolipōma</b></p> <p><b>myōma</b></p> <p><b>myonecrosis</b></p> <p><b>myopathia</b></p> <p><b>myopia</b></p> <p><b>myosclerōsis</b></p> <p><b>myosītis</b></p> <p><b>myotomia</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• benign tumor composed of adipose and smooth muscle cells</li> <li>• benign tumor of muscular tissue</li> <li>• destruction or death of muscle tissue</li> <li>• any disease of muscle (myopathy)</li> <li>• nearsightedness</li> <li>• hardening of muscle tissue</li> <li>• inflammation of muscle tissue</li> <li>• cutting or dissection of a muscle (myotomy)</li> </ul>
<h2 style="margin: 0;">N</h2>	
<p><b>narcologia</b></p> <p><b>narcomania</b></p> <p><b>nephralgia</b></p> <p><b>nephrectomia</b></p> <p><b>nephritīs</b></p> <p><b>nephroangiosclerōsis</b></p> <p><b>nephrographia</b></p> <p><b>nephrolithiāsis</b></p> <p><b>nephrologia</b></p> <p><b>nephronecrōsis</b></p> <p><b>nephropathia</b></p> <p><b>nephropexia</b></p> <p><b>nephroptōsis</b></p> <p><b>nephropyelostomia</b></p> <p><b>nephrorrhaphia</b></p> <p><b>nephrosclerōsis</b></p> <p><b>nephroscopia</b></p> <p><b>nephrosīs</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• study of drug and alcohol abuse and associated treatments</li> <li>• abnormal desire for drugs</li> <li>• pain in a kidney</li> <li>• surgical removal of a kidney (nephrectomy)</li> <li>• inflammation of the kidney</li> <li>• sclerosis of the renal arterioles</li> <li>• radiography of the kidney (nephrography)</li> <li>• calculi in the kidneys</li> <li>• branch of medicine dealing with the kidneys (nephrology)</li> <li>• destruction or death of kidney tissue</li> <li>• any disease of the kidneys (nephropathy)</li> <li>• surgical fixation of a mobile kidney (nephropexy)</li> <li>• downward displacement of a kidney</li> <li>• diversion of urine to the exterior by placement of a catheter into the renal pelvis (nephropyelostomy)</li> <li>• suture of the kidney (nephrorrhaphy)</li> <li>• hardening of the kidney</li> <li>• visualization of the kidney by means of the nephroscope (nephroscopy)</li> <li>• any noninflammatory degenerative kidney disease</li> </ul>

<p><b>nephrostomia</b></p> <p><b>nephrotomia</b></p> <p><b>neurectomia</b></p> <p><b>neurītis</b></p> <p><b>neuropathologia</b></p> <p><b>neurorrhaphia</b></p> <p><b>neurotomia</b></p> <p><b>nyctalgia</b></p> <p><b>nyctophobia</b></p> <p><b>nycturia</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• creation of a permanent fistula leading into the kidney (nephrostomy)</li> <li>• incision of a kidney (nephrotomy)</li> <li>• excision of a part of a nerve (neurectomy)</li> <li>• inflammation of a nerve</li> <li>• branch of medicine that studies and treats nervous system diseases (neuropathology)</li> <li>• suture of a divided nerve (neurorrhaphy)</li> <li>• dissection or cutting of nerves (neurotomy)</li> <li>• night pain</li> <li>• abnormal fear of the night or darkness</li> <li>• urination at night</li> </ul>
○	
<p><b>oculometry</b></p> <p><b>odontalgia</b></p> <p><b>odontōma</b></p> <p><b>odontometria</b></p> <p><b>oesophagectomia</b></p> <p><b>oesophagopathia</b></p> <p><b>oesophagostomia</b></p> <p><b>oligaemia</b></p> <p><b>oligodontia</b></p> <p><b>oligodipsia</b></p> <p><b>ologophasia</b></p> <p><b>oligopnōë</b></p> <p><b>oligosialia</b></p> <p><b>oliguria</b></p> <p><b>omentonephropexia</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• measurements of the eye structures</li> <li>• toothache</li> <li>• tumor of dental tissues</li> <li>• measurements of the teeth system</li> <li>• excision of all or a part of the esophagus</li> <li>• any disease of the esophagus (esophagopathy)</li> <li>• creation of an artificial opening into the esophagus (esophagostomy)</li> <li>• deficiency in volume of the blood</li> <li>• congenital absence of some of the teeth</li> <li>• abnormal absence of thirst</li> <li>• scarcity of words - that is a condition in which a person says, fewer words than might normally be expected</li> <li>• abnormally infrequent respiration (oligopnea)</li> <li>• decreased secretion of saliva</li> <li>• diminished urine production and excretion</li> <li>• surgical fixation of the omentum to the kidney (omentonephropexy)</li> </ul>

**omentohepatopexia**

**oncology**

**onychatrophia**

**onychia**

**onychocheilophagia**

**onychophagia**

**onychorrhēxis**

**ophthalmia**

**ophthalmologia**

**ophthalmoplegia**

**osteoarthrītis**

**osteoarthropathia**

**osteocondrītis**

**osteocondrodysplasia**

**osteocondrōma**

**osteocondrōsis**

**osteodysplasia**

**osteōma**

**osteometria**

**osteomyelītis**

**osteonecrōsis**

**osteopathia**

**osteoplastīca**

**osteotomia**

**ostītis**

**otītis**

**otoplastīca**

- surgical fixation of the omentum to the liver (omentohepatopexy)
- branch of medicine dealing with tumors, including study of their development, diagnosis, treatment, and prevention (oncology)
- atrophy of the fingernails or toenails
- disease of the nail bed
- biting of the nails and lips
- biting of the nails
- spontaneous splitting or breaking of the nails
- any disease of the eye
- branch of medicine that deals with the diagnosis and treatment of eye disorders (ophthalmology)
- paralysis of the eye muscles.
- inflammation of the bone and joint
- any disease of the joints and bones (osteoarthropathy)
- inflammation of bone and cartilage
- any disorder of cartilage and bone growth
- benign tumor composed of bone and cartilage
- impairment of bones and cartilages
- abnormal development of bone
- benign tumor composed of bony tissue
- measurement of the bones (osteometry)
- inflammation of bone and bone marrow
- necrosis (tissue death) of a bone
- any disease of the bone system (osteopathy)
- plastic surgery of the bones (osteoplasty)
- incision or transection of a bone (osteotomy)
- inflammation of bone
- inflammation of the ear
- plastic surgery of the ear (otoplasty)

<b>otorhinolaryngologia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• medical specialty concerned with diseases of the ear, nose, and throat (otorhinolaryngology)</li> </ul>
<b>P</b>	
<p><b>paediatrics</b></p> <p><b>paedopsychiatry</b></p> <p><b>palatoplastica</b></p> <p><b>panalgia</b></p> <p><b>panaortitis</b></p> <p><b>panbronchitis</b></p> <p><b>pancarditis</b></p> <p><b>pancreatectomia</b></p> <p><b>pancreolithiasis</b></p> <p><b>pancreonecrosis</b></p> <p><b>panhysterectomy</b></p> <p><b>panophthalmitis</b></p> <p><b>panphobia</b></p> <p><b>paracystitis</b></p> <p><b>parametritis</b></p> <p><b>paranephritis</b></p> <p><b>paraphlebitis</b></p> <p><b>parapleuritis</b></p> <p><b>paraproctitis</b></p> <p><b>patellectomia</b></p> <p><b>patelloděsis</b></p> <p><b>patelloplastica</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• branch of medicine dealing with children, their development and care (pediatrics)</li> <li>• children psychiatry</li> <li>• plastic surgery of the palate (palatoplasty)</li> <li>• pain in the entire body</li> <li>• diffuse inflammation of the aorta</li> <li>• diffuse inflammation of the bronchi</li> <li>• diffuse inflammation of the heart</li> <li>• surgical removal of the pancreas (pancreatectomy)</li> <li>• presence of calculi in the pancreas or pancreatic duct</li> <li>• destruction or death of pancreas tissue</li> <li>• complete surgical removal of the uterus (panhysterectomy)</li> <li>• inflammation of all the eye structures</li> <li>• fear of everything</li> <li>• inflammation of tissues around the urinary bladder</li> <li>• inflammation of the cellular tissue adjacent to the uterus</li> <li>• inflammation of the connective tissue around the kidney</li> <li>• inflammation of tissues around a vein</li> <li>• inflammation of the connective tissue around the pleura</li> <li>• inflammation affecting the tissues around the rectum</li> <li>• excision of the patella (patellectomy)</li> <li>• surgical fixation of the patella</li> <li>• surgical repair of the patella (patelloplasty)</li> </ul>

**pathologia**

**periarteriītis**

**pericholecystītis**

**pericolpītis**

**pericystītis**

**periduodenītis**

**perigastrītis**

**perilymphangiītis**

**perimetrītis**

**perinephrītis**

**perisalpingītis**

**phacosclerōsis**

**pharmacotherapia**

**pharyngostōma**

**pharyngotomia**

**phlebectomia**

**phlebogramma**

**phlebographia**

**phlebolīthus**

**phlebologia**

**phlebosclerōsis**

**phlebostenōsis**

**phlebotomia**

- branch of medicine dealing with the nature of diseases (pathology)
- inflammation of the external coats of an artery and of the tissues around the artery
- inflammation of tissues around the gallbladder
- inflammation of tissues around the vagina
- inflammation of the tissues surrounding the urinary bladder
- inflammation around the duodenum
- inflammation of the peritoneal coat of the stomach
- inflammation around a lymphatic vessel
- inflammation of the tissues around the uterus
- inflammation of the tissues surrounding a kidney
- inflammation of tissues around the uterine tube
- hardening of the eye lens
- treatment of disease with medicines (pharmacotherapy)
- artificial opening in the pharynx (pharyngostome)
- incision of the pharynx (pharyngotomy)
- excision of a vein (phlebectomy)
- film obtained by a radiography of a vein (phlebogram)
- radiography of a vein filled with contrast medium (phlebography)
- venous calculus (phlebolith)
- branch of medical science concerned with the anatomy and diseases of the veins (phlebology)
- thickening or hardening of the walls of a vein
- narrowing of the lumen of a vein
- incision of a vein (phlebotomy)

**phoniatria**

**phrenoptōsis**

**phthisiatria**

**phthisiophobia**

**physiotherapia**

**pleurectomia**

**pleurocentēsis**

**pleuropneumonectomia**

**pleurotomia**

**pneumaturia**

**pneumonectomia**

**pneumopathia**

**pneumopexia**

**pneumothorax**

**pneumotomia**

**polyadenītis**

**polyarthralgia**

**polyarthrītis**

**polydipsia**

**polyneurītis**

**polyopia**

**polyopsia**

**polyphagia**

**polysplenia**

- scientific study of speech and speech habits (phoniatics)
- abnormal downward displacement of the diaphragm
- branch of medicine dealing with care, treatment, and study of tuberculosis of the lung (phthisiology)
- fear of tuberculosis
- treatment of disorders with physical agents and methods, such as massage, manipulation, therapeutic exercises, cold, heat, hydrotherapy, electrical stimulation, light (physiotherapy)
- excision of the pleura (pleurectomy)
- surgical puncture of the chest wall into the parietal cavity
- excision of a lung with the pleura (pleuropneumonectomy)
- incision of the chest wall (pleurotomy)
- gas or air in the urine
- excision of an entire lung (pneumonectomy)
- any disease of the lungs (pneumopathy)
- surgical fixation of a lung (pneumopexy)
- accumulation of air or gas in the pleural cavity
- incision of the lung (pneumotomy)
- inflammation of several glands
- pain in several joints simultaneously
- inflammation of several joints
- chronic excessive thirst, as in diabetes mellitus
- inflammation of several peripheral nerves simultaneously
- multiple vision; the seeing of one object as more than one
- multiple vision; the seeing of one object as more than one
- excessive eating
- multiple small accessory spleens

<b>polyuria</b>	• excessive production of urine
<b>procheilia</b>	• protruding lips
<b>proctītis</b>	• inflammation of the rectum
<b>proctocele</b>	• hernial protrusion of part of the rectum into the vagina
<b>proctocolectomia</b>	• surgical removal of the rectum and all or part of the colon (proctocolectomy)
<b>proctalgia</b>	• pain in the rectum
<b>proctocolectomy</b>	• surgical removal of the rectum and all or part of the colon (proctocolectomy)
<b>proctologia</b>	• branch of medicine that deals with the diagnosis and treatment of disorders of the rectum, and anus (proctology)
<b>proctopexia</b>	• surgical fixation of the rectum (proctopexy)
<b>proctoplastica</b>	• plastic repair of the rectum (proctoplasty)
<b>proctorrhagia</b>	• bloody discharge from the rectum
<b>proctoscopia</b>	• visual examination of the rectum by means of a proctoscope (proctoscopy)
<b>proctospasmus</b>	• spasm of the rectum (proctospasm)
<b>proctostāsis</b>	• constipation with stasis in the rectum
<b>proctostomia</b>	• surgical formation of an artificial opening into the rectum (proctostomy)
<b>proctotomia</b>	• incision of the rectum (proctotomy)
<b>proteinaemia</b>	• excess of protein in the blood
<b>pseudoarthritis</b>	• false arthritis, musculoskeletal pain that does not involve the joints
<b>pseudomyopia</b>	• false nearsightedness, intermittent and temporary shift in refraction of the eye
<b>pseudoptōsis</b>	• condition resembling ptosis, due to abnormalities other than those found in the eyelid elevator muscles
<b>pseudostenōsis</b>	• false stenosis (nar pharmacotherapy rowing)
<b>psychiatria</b>	• branch of medicine concerned with the diagnosis and treatment of mental disorders (psychiatry)

<b>psychopathologia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• branch of medicine dealing with the causes and processes of mental disorders (psychopathology)</li> </ul>
<b>psychotherapia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• treatment of mental disorders by psychological methods (psychotherapy)</li> </ul>
<b>ptosis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• drooping of the upper eyelid</li> </ul>
<b>pulmonologia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• branch of medicine that deals with diseases of the respiratory system (pulmonology)</li> </ul>
<b>pyaemia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• pus in the blood</li> </ul>
<b>pyelitis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of the renal pelvis</li> </ul>
<b>pyelogramma</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• film produced by pyelography (pyelogram)</li> </ul>
<b>pyelographia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• roentgenography of the kidneys (pyelography)</li> </ul>
<b>pyeloscopia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• visual examination of the pelvis and the calices of the kidney (pyeloscopy)</li> </ul>
<b>pyelotomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• incision of the renal pelvis (pyelotomy)</li> </ul>
<b>pylorostenōsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• stricture or narrowing of the orifice of the pylorus</li> </ul>
<b>pyodermia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• any purulent skin disease</li> </ul>
<b>pyorrhoea</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• discharge of pus (pyorrhea)</li> </ul>
<b>pyosalpinx</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• collection of pus in a uterine tube</li> </ul>
<b>pyromania</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• uncontrollable impulse to start fires</li> </ul>
<b>pyrometria</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• measuring of temperature (pyrometry)</li> </ul>
<b>pyrophobia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• fear of fire</li> </ul>
<b>pyrotherapia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• method of treatment in which the temperature of a patient is raised to a fever level (pyrotherapy)</li> </ul>
<b>pyuria</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• pus in the urine</li> </ul>
<b>R</b>	
<b>radiotherapia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• treatment of neoplastic disease by using roentgen rays (radiotherapy)</li> </ul>
<b>rectocēle</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• hernial protrusion of part of the rectum into the vagina</li> </ul>
<b>rectoscopia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inspection of the rectum with a proctoscope (rectoscopy)</li> </ul>
<b>rhabdomyōma</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• benign tumor derived from striated muscle</li> </ul>

<p><b>rhabdomyosarcōma</b></p> <p><b>rhinītis</b></p> <p><b>rhinolīthus</b></p> <p><b>rhinopathia</b></p> <p><b>rhinophonia</b></p> <p><b>rhinoplastīca</b></p> <p><b>rhinorrhoea</b></p> <p><b>rhinoscopia</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• highly malignant tumor of striated muscle</li> <li>• inflammation of the nasal mucous membrane</li> <li>• nasal stone or concretion (rhinolith)</li> <li>• any disease of the nose (rhinopathy)</li> <li>• nasal tone in speech</li> <li>• plastic surgery of the nose (rhinoplasty)</li> <li>• discharge from the nose (rhinorrhea)</li> <li>• examination of the nose with a speculum (rhinoscopy)</li> </ul>
<h2>S</h2>	
<p><b>salpingectomy</b></p> <p><b>salpingītis</b></p> <p><b>salpingographia</b></p> <p><b>salpingostomia</b></p> <p><b>sarcōma</b></p> <p><b>sialadenectomy</b></p> <p><b>sialadenītis</b></p> <p><b>sialographia</b></p> <p><b>sialolithiāsis</b></p> <p><b>sialostenosis</b></p> <p><b>sphygmogramma</b></p> <p><b>sphygmographia</b></p> <p><b>splanchnopexia</b></p> <p><b>splanchnoptōsis</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical removal of the fallopian tube (salpingectomy)</li> <li>• inflammation of the fallopian tube</li> <li>• radiography of the uterine tubes (salpingography)</li> <li>• formation of an opening or fistula into a uterine tube (salpingostomy)</li> <li>• type of cancer that originates from connective tissue such as bone or muscle</li> <li>• surgical removal of a salivary gland (sialadenectomy)</li> <li>• inflammation of a salivary gland</li> <li>• radiography of the salivary glands or ducts following injection of contrast medium (sialography)</li> <li>• formation or presence of a salivary calculus</li> <li>• stricture of a salivary duct</li> <li>• record or tracing produced by a sphygmograph (sphygmogram)</li> <li>• recording the form, strength, and variations of the arterial pulse (sphygmography)</li> <li>• surgical fixation of viscera (splanchnopexy)</li> <li>• descent of the viscera from their normal positions</li> </ul>

<b>splenectomy</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical removal of the spleen (splenectomy)</li> </ul>
<b>splenopexia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical fixation of the spleen (splenopexy)</li> </ul>
<b>splenorrhaphia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• suture of the spleen (splenorrhaphy)</li> </ul>
<b>spondylalgia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• pain occurring in the spine</li> </ul>
<b>spondylitis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of vertebrae</li> </ul>
<b>spondylarthrit̃is</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of the intervertebral articulations</li> </ul>
<b>spondylarthropathia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• disease of the joints of the spine (spondylarthropathy)</li> </ul>
<b>spondylod̃esis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical fixation of two or more vertebrae</li> </ul>
<b>spondylodynia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• pain in a vertebra</li> </ul>
<b>T</b>	
<b>tachycardia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• rapid heart beat of more than 100 beats per minute in an adult</li> </ul>
<b>tachyphagia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• rapid or hasty eating</li> </ul>
<b>tachypñe</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• very rapid respiration (tachypnea)</li> </ul>
<b>tenod̃esis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical anchoring of a tendon</li> </ul>
<b>tenomyotomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• excision of a portion of a tendon and muscle (tenomyotomy)</li> </ul>
<b>tenoplast̃ica</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• plastic repair of a tendon (tenoplasty)</li> </ul>
<b>tenorrhaphia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• suture of a tendon (tenorrhaphy)</li> </ul>
<b>tenotomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical transection of a tendon (tenotomy)</li> </ul>
<b>teratology</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• study of the causes and effects of congenital malformations and developmental abnormalities (teratology)</li> </ul>
<b>tetraplegia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• paralysis of all four extremities</li> </ul>
<b>thalassophobia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• abnormal fear of the sea</li> </ul>
<b>thalassotherapia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• treatment system based on sea bathing and exposure to sea air (thalassotherapy)</li> </ul>
<b>thanatologia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• study of death and dying, especially of their psychological and social aspects (thanatology)</li> </ul>
<b>thermotherapia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• medical therapy involving the application of heat (thermotherapy)</li> </ul>

<b>thoracalgia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• pain in the chest</li> </ul>
<b>thoracoplastīca</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• plastic surgery performed on the thorax (thoracoplasty)</li> </ul>
<b>thoracoscopia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• endoscopic examination of the chest cavity (thoracoscopy)</li> </ul>
<b>thoracotomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• incision of the chest wall (thoracotomy)</li> </ul>
<b>tracheoplastika</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• plastic surgery of the trachea (tracheoplasty)</li> </ul>
<b>thrombectomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical removal of a clot from a blood vessel (thrombectomy)</li> </ul>
<b>thrombocytopenia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• abnormal decrease in the number of platelets in the blood</li> </ul>
<b>thrombocytopoēsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• process of formation of thrombocytes</li> </ul>
<b>thrombocytōsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• increase in the number of platelets in the blood</li> </ul>
<b>thrombopenia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• abnormal decrease in the number of platelets in the blood</li> </ul>
<b>thrombophlebītis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of a vein with blood clot formation inside the vein</li> </ul>
<b>thrombōsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• formation or presence of a blood clot in a blood vessel</li> </ul>
<b>tomographia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• radiographic technique that produces a film representing a detailed cross section of tissue (tomography)</li> </ul>
<b>tracheītis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of the trachea</li> </ul>
<b>tracheostenōsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• abnormal narrowing of the lumen of the trachea</li> </ul>
<b>tracheostōma</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• opening through the neck and into the trachea</li> </ul>
<b>tracheotomia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical incision into the trachea (tracheotomy)</li> </ul>
<b>trichopathia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• any disease of the hair (trichopathy)</li> </ul>
<b>trichophagia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• habit of eating hair</li> </ul>
<b>typhlatonia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• decreased or absent tone of the cecum</li> </ul>
<b>typhlomegalia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• abnormal enlargement of the cecum (typhlomegaly)</li> </ul>
<b>typhloplexia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• surgical operation for fixing the cecum (typhlopexy)</li> </ul>
<b>typhloptōsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• downward displacement of the cecum</li> </ul>
<b>typhlospasmus</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• spasm of the cecum (typhlospasm)</li> </ul>

<b>U</b>	
<b>uraemia</b> <b>urolithiāsis</b> <b>urolīthus</b>  <b>urologia</b>  <b>uropoēsis</b> <b>urostāsis</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• excessive amounts of urea in the blood</li> <li>• presence of calculi in the urinary system</li> <li>• urinary calculus</li> <li>• branch of medicine concerned with the study of the anatomy, physiology, disorders, and care of the urinary tract (urology)</li> <li>• formation of urine (uropoiesis)</li> <li>• stoppage of the flow or discharge of urine</li> </ul>
<b>V</b>	
<b>vasculītis</b> <b>vasopathia</b>  <b>vitaminotherapia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• inflammation of a blood or lymph vessel</li> <li>• any disease of the vessels (vasopathy)</li> <li>• therapeutic method using one or more vitamins (vitaminotherapy)</li> </ul>
<b>X</b>	
<b>xanthochromia</b> <b>xanthoerythrodermia</b> <b>xanthopsia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• yellowish discoloration of the skin</li> <li>• yellow and red coloration of the skin</li> <li>• condition in which all objects appear of a yellow colour</li> </ul>

# English-Latin Dictionary

## A

abdominal haemorrhage	<i>laparohaemorrhagia</i>
abnormal absence of thirst	<i>oligodipsia</i>
abnormal accumulation of fluid in the brain	<i>hydrocephalia</i>
abnormal collection of milk in the mammary glands	<i>galactostāsis</i>
abnormal decrease in the number of platelets in the blood	<i>thrombocytopenia</i>
abnormal decrease in the number of platelets in the blood	<i>thrombopenia</i>
abnormal desire for drugs	<i>narcomania</i>
abnormal desire to be closed in, to shut all windows and doors	<i>claustromania</i>
abnormal development of a tissue or an organ	<i>megaloplasia</i>
abnormal development of bone	<i>osteodysplasia</i>
abnormal development of skull	<i>craniodysplasia</i>
abnormal development or growth of tissues, organs, or cells	<i>dysplasia</i>
abnormal dislike of children	<i>misopaedia</i>
abnormal downward displacement of the diaphragm	<i>phrenoptōsis</i>
abnormal enlargement of limbs (acromegaly)	<i>acromegalia</i>
abnormal enlargement of the cecum (typhlomegaly)	<i>typhlomegalia</i>
abnormal enlargement of the heart	<i>macrocardia</i>
abnormal enlargement of the heart (cardiomegaly)	<i>cardiomegalia</i>
abnormal enlargement of the liver (hepatomegaly)	<i>hepatomegalia</i>
abnormal fear of colors	<i>chromophobia</i>
abnormal fear of enclosed spaces	<i>claustrophobia</i>
abnormal fear of heart disease	<i>cardiophobia</i>
abnormal fear of heights	<i>acrophobia</i>
abnormal fear of the night or darkness	<i>nyctophobia</i>
abnormal fear of the sea	<i>thalassophobia</i>
abnormal fear of the sight of blood	<i>haematophobia</i>

abnormal fear of thieves or of loss through thievery	<i>cleptophobia</i>
abnormal fear of water	<i>hydrophobia</i>
abnormal growth of cartilage	<i>chondrodysplasia</i>
abnormal hardening of the skin	<i>dermatosclerosis</i>
abnormal increase in depth and rate of respiration (hyperpnea)	<i>hyperpnöë</i>
abnormal increase in the number of white blood cells (leukemia)	<i>leucōsis</i>
abnormal increase in volume of a tissue or organ caused by the formation and growth of new normal cells	<i>hyperplasia</i>
abnormal largeness of the head	<i>macrocephalia</i>
abnormal largeness of the lips	<i>macrocheilia</i>
abnormal narrowing of the lumen of the trachea	<i>tracheostenōsis</i>
abnormal slowness in speech	<i>bradyphasia</i>
abnormal slowness of eating	<i>bradyphagia</i>
abnormal smallness of the fingernails or toenails	<i>micronychia</i>
abnormal smallness of the mammary gland	<i>micromastia</i>
abnormal smallness of the stomach	<i>microgastria</i>
abnormal spinal cord development	<i>myelodysplasia</i>
abnormally acute sense of smell	<i>hyperosmia</i>
abnormally enlarged breasts	<i>macromastia</i>
abnormally enlarged tongue	<i>macroglossia</i>
abnormally high level of calcium in the blood	<i>hypercalcaemia</i>
abnormally high lymphocyte count in the blood	<i>lymphocytōsis</i>
abnormally infrequent respiration (oligopnea)	<i>oligopnöë</i>
abnormally large handwriting	<i>macrographia</i>
abnormally large teeth	<i>macrodontia</i>
abnormally low milk secretion	<i>hypogalactia</i>
abnormally low number of monocytes in the blood	<i>monocytopenia</i>
abnormally low number of white blood cells in the circulating blood	<i>leucopenia</i>
abnormally slow breathing rate (bradypnea)	<i>bradypnöë</i>
abnormally small eyeball	<i>microphthalmus</i>
abnormally small head	<i>microcephalia</i>

abnormally small tongue	<i>microglossia</i>
abnormally small, cramped handwriting	<i>micrographia</i>
absence of emotions	<i>apathia</i>
absence of pain	<i>analgia</i>
absence of the lens of an eye	<i>aphakia</i>
absence of the spleen	<i>asplenia</i>
absence of urine formation	<i>anuria</i>
absence or failure of secretion of milk	<i>agalactia</i>
absence or lack of normal tone	<i>atonia</i>
accumulation of air and blood in the pleural cavity	<i>haemopneumothorax</i>
accumulation of air or gas in the pleural cavity	<i>pneumothorax</i>
accumulation of blood in the uterine cavity	<i>haematometra</i>
accumulation of blood within the pericardial sac	<i>haemopericardium</i>
accumulation of serous fluid in one or both pleural cavities	<i>hydrothōrax</i>
accumulation of watery fluid in the pericardial cavity	<i>hydropericardium</i>
anastomosis of the gallbladder and colon (cholecystocolostomy)	<i>cholecystocolostomia</i>
any degenerative brain disease (encephalopathy)	<i>encephalopathia</i>
any disease of limbs (acropathy)	<i>acropathia</i>
any disease of muscle (myopathy)	<i>myopathia</i>
any disease of the bone system (osteopathy)	<i>osteopathia</i>
any disease of the bronchi (bronchopathy)	<i>bronchopathia</i>
any disease of the esophagus (esophagopathy)	<i>oesophagopathia</i>
any disease of the eye	<i>ophthalmia</i>
any disease of the gallbladder (cholecystopathy)	<i>cholecystopathia</i>
any disease of the hair (trichopathy)	<i>trichopathia</i>
any disease of the intestine (enteropathy)	<i>enteropathia</i>
any disease of the joints and bones (osteoarthropathy)	<i>osteoarthropathia</i>
any disease of the kidneys (nephropathy)	<i>nephropathia</i>
any disease of the leukocytes	<i>leucopathia</i>
any disease of the liver (hepatopathy)	<i>hepatopathia</i>
any disease of the lungs (pneumopathy)	<i>pneumopathia</i>
any disease of the mammary gland (mastopathy)	<i>mastopathia</i>

any disease of the myocardium (cardiomyopathy)	<i>cardiomyopathia</i>
any disease of the nose (rhinopathy)	<i>rhinopathia</i>
any disease of the spinal cord (myelopathy)	<i>myelopathia</i>
any disease of the stomach (gastropathy)	<i>gastropathia</i>
any disease of the vessels (angiopathy)	<i>angiopathia</i>
any disease of the vessels (vasopathy)	<i>vasopathia</i>
any disorder of cartilage and bone growth	<i>osteochondrodysplasia</i>
any functional disorder of the liver	<i>hepatōsis</i>
any impairment of muscle tone	<i>dystonia</i>
any joint disease (arthropathy)	<i>arthropathia</i>
any lesions in small blood vessels (microangiopathy)	<i>microangiopathia</i>
any noninflammatory degenerative kidney disease	<i>nephrosīs</i>
any noninflammatory skin disease	<i>dermatosis</i>
any purulent skin disease	<i>pyodermia</i>
application of medicinal leeches (hirudotherapy)	<i>hirudotherapy</i>
artificial opening in the pharynx (pharyngostome)	<i>pharyngostōma</i>
atrophy of one side of a body part or organ (hemiatrophy)	<i>hemiatrophia</i>
atrophy of the fingernails or toenails	<i>onychatrophia</i>
<b>B</b>	
bacteria in the blood	<i>bacteriaemia</i>
benign tumor composed of abnormal blood vessels	<i>haemangiōma</i>
benign tumor composed of adipose and smooth muscle cells	<i>myolipōma</i>
benign tumor composed of bone and cartilage	<i>osteochondrōma</i>
benign tumor composed of bony tissue	<i>osteōma</i>
benign tumor derived from epithelial cells of sweat glands	<i>hidradenōma</i>
benign tumor derived from striated muscle	<i>rhabdomyōma</i>
benign tumor of cartilage	<i>chondrōma</i>
benign tumor of fatty tissue	<i>lipōma</i>
benign tumor of glandular epithelium	<i>adenōma</i>
benign tumor of muscular tissue	<i>myōma</i>

bile or bile pigment in the blood	<i>cholaemia</i>
biting of the lips	<i>cheilophagia</i>
biting of the nails	<i>onychophagia</i>
biting of the nails and lips	<i>onychocheilophagia</i>
bleeding, haemorrhage	<i>haemorrhagia</i>
blindness in half of the visual field	<i>hemiopia</i>
blindness resulting from a defect in or the absence of one or both eyes	<i>anopia</i>
blood in the urine	<i>haematuria</i>
bloody discharge from the rectum	<i>proctorrhagia</i>
branch of medical science concerned with the anatomy and diseases of the veins (phlebology)	<i>phlebologia</i>
branch of medical science concerned with the liver and its diseases (hepatology)	<i>hepatology</i>
branch of medical science dealing with the blood and blood-forming tissues (hematology)	<i>haematologia</i>
branch of medical science that studies the causes and treatment of allergies (allergology)	<i>allergology</i>
branch of medical science that studies the diseases of women (gynecology)	<i>gynaecologia</i>
branch of medicine concerned with the diagnosis and treatment of mental disorders (psychiatry)	<i>psychiatria</i>
branch of medicine concerned with the relief of pain and the administration of medication to relieve pain (anesthesiology)	<i>anaesthesiologia</i>
branch of medicine concerned with the study of the anatomy, physiology, disorders, and care of the urinary tract (urology)	<i>urologia</i>
branch of medicine dealing with care, treatment, and study of tuberculosis of the lung (phthisiology)	<i>phthisiatria</i>
branch of medicine dealing with children, their development and care (pediatrics)	<i>paediatria</i>
branch of medicine dealing with the causes and processes of mental disorders (psychopathology)	<i>psychopathologia</i>
branch of medicine dealing with the kidneys (nephrology)	<i>nephrologia</i>
branch of medicine dealing with the nature of diseases (pathology)	<i>pathologia</i>

branch of medicine dealing with tumors, including study of their development, diagnosis, treatment, and prevention (oncology)	<i>oncology</i>
branch of medicine that deals with diseases of the respiratory system (pulmonology)	<i>pulmonologia</i>
branch of medicine that deals with the diagnosis and treatment of skin diseases (dermatology)	<i>dermatologia</i>
branch of medicine that deals with the diagnosis and treatment of eye disorders (ophthalmology)	<i>ophthalmologia</i>
branch of medicine that deals with the diagnosis and treatment of disorders of the rectum, and anus (proctology)	<i>proctologia</i>
branch of medicine that studies and treats nervous system diseases (neuropathology)	<i>neuropathologia</i>
bronchial spasm (bronchospasm)	<i>bronchospasmus</i>
<b>C</b>	
calculi in the kidneys	<i>nephrolithiāsis</i>
children psychiatry	<i>paedopsychiatria</i>
chronic excessive thirst, as in diabetes mellitus	<i>polydipsia</i>
collection of pus in a uterine tube	<i>pyosalpinx</i>
complete detailed examination of the blood (hemogram)	<i>haemogramma</i>
complete surgical removal of the uterus (panhysterectomy)	<i>panhysterectomia</i>
compulsive desire to drink alcoholic beverages	<i>dipsomania</i>
condition at which the patient has missing several teeth	<i>hypodontia</i>
condition in which all objects appear of a yellow colour	<i>xanthopsia</i>
condition marked by the development of multiple adenolipomas	<i>adenolipomatōsis</i>
condition resembling ptosis, due to abnormalities other than those found in the eyelid elevator muscles	<i>pseudoptōsis</i>
congenital absence of one or both mammary glands	<i>amastia</i>
congenital absence of skin	<i>adermia</i>
congenital absence of some of the teeth	<i>oligodontia</i>

congenital absence of the eyelids	<i>ablepharia</i>
congenital absence of the head	<i>acephalia</i>
congenital absence of the heart	<i>acardia</i>
congenital absence of the iris	<i>aniridia</i>
congenital absence of the lips	<i>acheilia</i>
congenital absence of the lungs	<i>apneumia</i>
congenital absence of the spinal cord	<i>amyelia</i>
congenital absence of the urinary bladder	<i>acystia</i>
congenital anomaly characterized by abnormal largeness of the brain	<i>macroencephalia</i>
constipation with stasis in the rectum	<i>proctostāsis</i>
contrast radiography of the stomach	<i>gastrographia</i>
creation of a permanent fistula leading into the kidney (nephrostomy)	<i>nephrostomia</i>
creation of an artificial opening into the esophagus (esophagostomy)	<i>oesophagostomia</i>
curve traced by a cardiograph (cardiogram)	<i>cardiogramma</i>
cutting or dissection of a muscle (myotomy)	<i>myotomia</i>
<b>D</b>	
decreased secretion of saliva	<i>oligosialia</i>
decreased or absent tone of the cecum	<i>typhlatonia</i>
decreased sensibility to pain	<i>hypalgia</i>
defect or loss of vision	<i>anopsia</i>
defective development resulting in the absence of all or part of an organ or tissue	<i>aplasia</i>
deficiency in volume of the blood	<i>oligaemia</i>
degenerative disease of a joint	<i>arthrōsis</i>
degenerative disorder caused by inadequate or defective nutrition (dystrophy)	<i>dystrophia</i>
delusion of self-depreciation	<i>micromania</i>
descent of the viscera from their normal positions	<i>splanchnoptōsis</i>
destruction or death of cartilage tissue	<i>chondronecrōsis</i>
destruction or death of kidney tissue	<i>nephronecrōsis</i>
destruction or death of muscle tissue	<i>myonecrosis</i>
destruction or death of pancreas tissue	<i>pancreonecrōsis</i>
development of multiple glandular tumors	<i>adenomatōsis</i>

decreased salivary flow (hyposalivation)	<i>hyposialia</i>
difficulty in breathing or shortness of breath, typically associated with some form of heart or lung disease (dyspnea)	<i>dyspnōē</i>
difficulty in swallowing	<i>dysphagia</i>
diffuse inflammation of the aorta	<i>panaortītis</i>
diffuse inflammation of the bronchi	<i>panbronchītis</i>
diffuse inflammation of the heart	<i>pancardītis</i>
diminished sense of smell	<i>hyposmia</i>
diminished tone of the skeletal muscles	<i>hypotonia</i>
diminished urine production and excretion	<i>oliguria</i>
discharge from the nose (rhinorrhea)	<i>rhinorrhoea</i>
discharge of pus (pyorrhea)	<i>pyorrhoea</i>
disease of the joints of the spine (spondylarthropathy)	<i>spondylarthropathia</i>
disease of the nail bed	<i>onychia</i>
dislike for writing	<i>graphophobia</i>
disorder of color vision	<i>dyschromatopsia</i>
dissection or cutting of nerves (neurotomy)	<i>neurotomia</i>
diversion of urine to the exterior by placement of a catheter into the renal pelvis (nephropyelostomy)	<i>nephropyelostomia</i>
downward displacement of a kidney	<i>nephroptōsis</i>
downward displacement of the liver	<i>hepatoptōsis</i>
downward displacement of the stomach	<i>gastroptōsis</i>
downward displacement of the tongue	<i>glossoptōsis</i>
downward displacement of the cecum	<i>typhloptōsis</i>
drooping of the upper eyelid	<i>ptosis</i>
dystrophic changes of muscular tissue (myodystrophy)	<i>myodystrophia</i>
<b>E</b>	
effusion of blood into the eyeball	<i>haemophthalmia</i>
efficiency or decrease in number of erythrocytes	<i>erythrocytopenia</i>
elevated number of white cells in the blood	<i>leucocytōsis</i>
endoscope for examining the interior of a joint (arthroscope)	<i>arthroscop</i>

endoscope used to examine the interior of the urinary bladder and ureter (cystoscope)	<i>cystoscop</i>
endoscopic examination of the chest cavity (thoracoscopy)	<i>thoracosopia</i>
endoscopic examination of the colon	<i>colonoscopia</i>
endoscopic examination of the stomach and duodenum (gastroduodenoscopy)	<i>gastroduodenoscopia</i>
enlargement of the liver and the spleen (hepatosplenomegaly)	<i>hepatosplenomegalia</i>
establishment of a fistula between the liver and the gallbladder (hepatocholecystostomy)	<i>hepatocholecystostomia</i>
establishment of a fistula between the liver, gallbladder and intestine (hepatocholecystoenterostomy)	<i>hepatocholecystoenterostomia</i>
establishment of a fistula between the liver, gallbladder and stomach (hepatocholecystogastrostomy)	<i>hepatocholecystogastrostomia</i>
establishment of a fistula into the gallbladder (cholecystostomy)	<i>cholecystostomia</i>
examination of the amniotic cavity and fetus using an optical instrument (amnioscopy)	<i>amnioscopia</i>
examination of the bronchi through a bronchoscope (bronchoscopy)	<i>bronchoscopia</i>
examination of the interior of the abdomen by a laparoscope (laparoscopy)	<i>laparoscopia</i>
examination of the larynx by means of a laryngoscope (laryngoscopy)	<i>laryngoscopia</i>
examination of the nose with a speculum (rrhinoscopy)	<i>rhinoscopia</i>
excess of lipids in the blood	<i>hyperlipaemia</i>
excess of protein in the blood	<i>proteinaemia</i>
excess of water in the blood	<i>hydraemia</i>
excessive amounts of urea in the blood	<i>uraemia</i>
excessive eating	<i>polyphagia</i>
excessive functional activity of the thyroid gland (hyperthyroidism)	<i>hyperthyreōsis</i>
excessive growth of tissue or of an organ, independent of and out of proportion to the rest of the body (hypertrophy)	<i>hypertrophia</i>

excessive production of urine	<i>polyuria</i>
excessive tone of the skeletal muscles	<i>hypertonia</i>
excessive vomiting	<i>hyperemēsis</i>
excision of a lung with the pleura (pleuropneumectomy)	<i>pleuropneumectomy</i>
excision of a muscle (myectomy)	<i>myectomy</i>
excision of a part of a nerve (neurectomy)	<i>neurectomy</i>
excision of a portion of a tendon and muscle (tenomyotomy)	<i>tenomyotomy</i>
excision of a vein (phlebectomy)	<i>phlebectomy</i>
excision of all or a part of the esophagus	<i>oesophagectomy</i>
excision of an entire lung (pneumectomy)	<i>pneumectomy</i>
excision of one half of the liver (hemihepatectomy)	<i>hemihepatectomy</i>
excision of one lateral half of the larynx (hemilaryngectomy)	<i>hemilaryngectomy</i>
excision of part (half) of a kidney (heminephrectomy)	<i>heminephrectomy</i>
excision of the duodenum (duodenectomy)	<i>duodenectomy</i>
excision of the patella (patellectomy)	<i>patellectomy</i>
excision of the pleura (pleurectomy)	<i>pleurectomy</i>
excision of the stomach (gastrectomy)	<i>gastrectomy</i>
<b>F</b>	
false arthritis, musculoskeletal pain that does not involve the joints	<i>pseudoarthritis</i>
false nearsightedness, intermittent and temporary shift in refraction of the eye	<i>pseudomyopia</i>
false stenosis (nar pharmacotherapy rowing)	<i>pseudostenōsis</i>
farsightedness	<i>hypermetropia</i>
fear of everything	<i>panphobia</i>
fear of fire	<i>pyrophobia</i>
fear of tuberculosis	<i>phthisiophobia</i>
fibrous induration of the heart	<i>cardiosclerōsis</i>
film obtained by a radiography of a vein (phlebogram)	<i>phlebogramma</i>
film obtained by cystography (cystogram)	<i>cystogramma</i>
film produced by pyelography (pyelogram)	<i>pyelogramma</i>

film produced by the radiography of the heart and great vessels (angiocardio-gram)	<i>angiocardiogramma</i>
flow of lymph from cut or ruptured lymph vessels	<i>lymphorrhoea</i>
formation of an opening or fistula into a uterine tube (salpingostomy)	<i>salpingostomia</i>
formation of blood cells (hemopoiesis)	<i>haemopoësis</i>
formation of blood or blood cells	<i>haemopoesis</i>
formation of urine (uropoiesis)	<i>uropoësis</i>
formation or presence of a blood clot in a blood vessel	<i>thrombōsis</i>
formation or presence of a salivary calculus	<i>sialolithiāsis</i>
<b>G</b>	
gas or air in the urine	<i>pneumaturia</i>
<b>H</b>	
habit of eating hair	<i>trichophagia</i>
hardening of muscle tissue	<i>mysclerōsis</i>
hardening of the eye lens	<i>phacosclerōsis</i>
hardening of the kidney	<i>nephrosclerōsis</i>
headache	<i>cephalgia</i>
heartburn	<i>cardialgia</i>
hemorrhage from the stomach	<i>gastrorrhagia</i>
hernia of the urinary bladder	<i>cystocēle</i>
hernia of the uterus	<i>hysterocēle</i>
hernial protrusion of part of the iris through the cornea	<i>iridocēle</i>
hernial protrusion of part of the liver through the abdominal wall	<i>hepatocēle</i>
hernial protrusion of part of the rectum into the vagina	<i>proctocēle</i>
hernial protrusion of part of the rectum into the vagina	<i>rectocēle</i>
hernial protrusion of the stomach	<i>gastrocēle</i>
high blood pressure (hypertension)	<i>hypertensio</i>
<b>I</b>	
impairment of bones and cartilages	<i>osteochondrōsis</i>
impairment of speech and verbal comprehension	<i>dysphasia</i>

impairment of the ability to write	<i>dysgraphia</i>
impairment of urination	<i>dysuria</i>
impairment or dysfunction of the sense of smell	<i>dysosmia</i>
impairment or loss of the ability to write (agraphy)	<i>agraphia</i>
inability to distinguish any colors	<i>achromatopsia</i>
inability to speak or express oneself in words	<i>aphasia</i>
incision of a bronchus (bronchotomy)	<i>bronchotomia</i>
incision of a joint (arthrotomy)	<i>arthrotomia</i>
incision of a kidney (nephrotomy)	<i>nephrotomia</i>
incision of a vein (phlebotomy)	<i>phlebotomia</i>
incision of an abscess	<i>abscessotomia</i>
incision of the chest wall (pleurotomy)	<i>pleurotomia</i>
incision of the chest wall (thoracotomy)	<i>thoracotomia</i>
incision of the colon	<i>colotomia</i>
incision of the cornea (keratotomy)	<i>keratotomia</i>
incision of the gallbladder (cholecystotomy)	<i>cholecystotomia</i>
incision of the intestine (enterotomy)	<i>enterotomia</i>
incision of the iris (iridotomy)	<i>iridotomia</i>
incision of the liver (hepatotomy)	<i>hepatotomia</i>
incision of the lung (pneumotomy)	<i>pneumotomia</i>
incision of the pharynx (pharyngotomy)	<i>pharyngotomia</i>
incision of the rectum (proctotomy)	<i>proctotomia</i>
incision of the renal pelvis (pyelotomy)	<i>pyelotomia</i>
incision of the uterus (hysterotomy)	<i>hysterotomia</i>
incision of the vagina (colpotomy)	<i>colpotomia</i>
incision or transection of a bone (osteotomy)	<i>osteotomia</i>
incomplete development or underdevelopment of an organ or tissue	<i>hypoplasia</i>
increase in the number of platelets in the blood	<i>thrombocytōsis</i>
increase in the quantity of blood flow to a body part	<i>hyperaemia</i>
increased amounts of lipids in the blood	<i>lipaemia</i>
increased level of sensibility (to pain)	<i>hyperpathia</i>
increased production of red blood cells	<i>erythrocytōsis</i>
inflammation affecting the tissues around the rectum	<i>paraproctitis</i>

inflammation around a lymphatic vessel	<i>perilymphangiitis</i>
inflammation around the duodenum	<i>periduodenitis</i>
inflammation of a blood or lymph vessel	<i>vasculitis</i>
inflammation of a gland	<i>adenitis</i>
inflammation of a joint	<i>arthrititis</i>
inflammation of a lymph node	<i>lymphadenitis</i>
inflammation of a nerve	<i>neuritis</i>
inflammation of a salivary gland	<i>sialadenitis</i>
inflammation of a vein with blood clot formation inside the vein	<i>thrombophlebitis</i>
inflammation of a vessel	<i>angiitis</i>
inflammation of all the eye structures	<i>panophthalmitis</i>
inflammation of an artery	<i>arteriitis</i>
inflammation of bone	<i>ostitis</i>
inflammation of bone and bone marrow	<i>osteomyelitis</i>
inflammation of bone and cartilage	<i>osteochondritis</i>
inflammation of muscle tissue	<i>myositis</i>
inflammation of one or more bronchi	<i>bronchitis</i>
inflammation of several glands	<i>polyadenitis</i>
inflammation of several joints	<i>polyarthrititis</i>
inflammation of several peripheral nerves simultaneously	<i>polyneuritis</i>
inflammation of the amnion	<i>amnionitis</i>
inflammation of the aorta	<i>aortitis</i>
inflammation of the bone and joint	<i>osteoarthrititis</i>
inflammation of the cellular tissue adjacent to the uterus	<i>parametritis</i>
inflammation of the colon	<i>colitis</i>
inflammation of the connective tissue around the kidney	<i>paranephritis</i>
inflammation of the connective tissue around the pleura	<i>parapleuritis</i>
inflammation of the cornea	<i>keratitis</i>
inflammation of the duodenum	<i>duodenitis</i>
inflammation of the ear	<i>otitis</i>
inflammation of the endometrium or mucous membrane of the uterus	<i>endometritis</i>

inflammation of the external coats of an artery and of the tissues around the artery	<i>periarteriūtis</i>
inflammation of the eyelids	<i>blepharītis</i>
inflammation of the fallopian tube	<i>salpingītis</i>
inflammation of the gallbladder	<i>cholecystītis</i>
inflammation of the gallbladder and bile ducts	<i>angiocholecystītis</i>
inflammation of the heart muscle	<i>myocarditis</i>
inflammation of the inner layer of arteries	<i>endarteriūtis</i>
inflammation of the inner layer of the aorta	<i>endaortītis</i>
inflammation of the internal structures of the tissues in the eyeball	<i>endophthalmītis</i>
inflammation of the internal structures of the tissues in the eyeball	<i>enophthalmitis</i>
inflammation of the intervertebral articulations	<i>spondylarthrītis</i>
inflammation of the intestine	<i>enterītis</i>
inflammation of the intima of a vein	<i>endophlebītis</i>
inflammation of the kidney	<i>nephritis</i>
inflammation of the larynx	<i>laryngītis</i>
inflammation of the lips	<i>cheilītis</i>
inflammation of the liver	<i>hepatītis</i>
inflammation of the lymph vessels	<i>lymphangiītis</i>
inflammation of the mammary gland	<i>mastītis</i>
inflammation of the middle ear	<i>mesotympanītis</i>
inflammation of the middle layer of an artery	<i>mesarteriūtis</i>
inflammation of the middle layer of the aorta	<i>mesaortītis</i>
inflammation of the middle part of the pharynx	<i>mesopharyngītis</i>
inflammation of the mucous membrane lining the eustachian or fallopian tube	<i>endosalpingitis</i>
inflammation of the nasal mucous membrane	<i>rhinītis</i>
inflammation of the peritoneal coat of the stomach	<i>perigastrītis</i>
inflammation of the rectum	<i>proctītis</i>
inflammation of the renal pelvis	<i>pyelītis</i>
inflammation of the skin of the extremities	<i>acrodermatītis</i>
inflammation of the small intestine and colon	<i>enterocolītis</i>
inflammation of the spinal cord or of the bone marrow	<i>myelītis</i>

inflammation of the stomach	<i>gastrītis</i>
inflammation of the stomach and intestine	<i>gastroenterītis</i>
inflammation of the stomach, small intestines, and colon	<i>gastroenterocolītis</i>
inflammation of the sweat glands	<i>hidradenītis</i>
inflammation of the tissues around the uterus	<i>perimetrītis</i>
inflammation of the tissues surrounding a kidney	<i>perinephrītis</i>
inflammation of the tissues surrounding the urinary bladder	<i>pericystītis</i>
inflammation of the tongue	<i>glossītis</i>
inflammation of the trachea	<i>tracheītis</i>
inflammation of the vagina	<i>colpītis</i>
inflammation of tissues around a vein	<i>paraphlebītis</i>
inflammation of tissues around the gallbladder	<i>pericholecystītis</i>
inflammation of tissues around the urinary bladder	<i>paracystītis</i>
inflammation of tissues around the uterine tube	<i>perisalpingītis</i>
inflammation of tissues around the vagina	<i>pericolpītis</i>
inflammation of vertebrae	<i>spondylītis</i>
inspection of the rectum with a proctoscope (rectoscopy)	<i>rectoscopia</i>
insufficient production of thyroid hormones (hypothyroism)	<i>hypothyreōsis</i>
intense fear of bees	<i>apiphobia</i>
intestinal calculus (enterolith)	<i>enterolīthus</i>
intestinal spasm (enterospasm)	<i>enterospasmus</i>
irrational fear of the color red	<i>erythrophobia</i>
<b>L</b>	
laceration of the vagina	<i>colporrhēxis</i>
lack of blood	<i>anaemia</i>
lack of muscular tonus	<i>amytonia</i>
lack of muscular tonus	<i>myatonia</i>
lack of salivary flow	<i>asialia</i>
lack of salivary flow (asialorrhoea)	<i>asialorrhoea</i>
lack of the sense of smell	<i>anosmia</i>
lipids in the urine	<i>lipuria</i>

loss of the ability to swallow	<i>aphagia</i>
loss of voice	<i>aphonia</i>
low level of cholesterol in the blood	<i>hypocholesterinaemia</i>
<b>M</b>	
malignant tumor (cancer)	<i>carcinōma</i>
malignant tumor derived from glandular tissue	<i>adenocarcinōma</i>
marked weakness of voice	<i>microphonia</i>
measurement of the amounts of heat radiated and absorbed	<i>calorimetria</i>
measurement of the bones (osteometry)	<i>osteometria</i>
measurement of the dimensions of the head (cephalometry)	<i>cephalometria</i>
measurements of the abdominal circumference	<i>laparometria</i>
measurements of the eye structures	<i>oculometry</i>
measurements of the teeth system	<i>odontometria</i>
measuring of temperature (pyrometry)	<i>pyrometria</i>
medical science that studies speech defects and their treatment	<i>logopaedia</i>
medical specialty concerned with diseases of the ear, nose, and throat (otorhinolaryngology)	<i>otorhinolaryngologia</i>
medical study of the structure, function, and disorders of the heart (cardiology)	<i>cardiologia</i>
medical therapy involving the application of heat (thermotherapy)	<i>thermotherapia</i>
mental illness characterized by delusions of grandeur, power, wealth	<i>megalomania</i>
method of treatment in which the temperature of a patient is raised to a fever level (pyrotherapy)	<i>pyrotherapia</i>
milk-containing, cystic enlargement of the mammary gland	<i>galactocēle</i>
multiple small accessory spleens	<i>polysplenia</i>
multiple vision; the seeing of one object as more than one	<i>polyopia</i>
multiple vision; the seeing of one object as more than one	<i>polyopsia</i>
muscular pain	<i>myalgia</i>

N	
narrowing of a bronchus	<i>bronchostenōsis</i>
narrowing of the lumen of a vein	<i>phlebostenōsis</i>
narrowing or stricture of the larynx	<i>laryngostenōsis</i>
nasal stone or concretion (rhinolith)	<i>rhinolīthus</i>
nasal tone in speech	<i>rhinophonia</i>
nearsightedness	<i>myopia</i>
necrosis (tissue death) of a bone	<i>osteonecrōsis</i>
neoplasm derived from blood vessels	<i>haemangioendotheliōma</i>
night pain	<i>nyctalgia</i>
noninflammatory disorder of the lips	<i>cheilōsis</i>
normal carbon dioxide tension of the blood (eucapnia)	<i>eucapnia</i>
O	
obsession with writing	<i>graphomania</i>
obsessive impulse to steal regardless of economic need	<i>cleptomania</i>
opening through the neck and into the trachea	<i>tracheostōma</i>
overgrowth of one side of the body or of a part (hemihypertrophy)	<i>hemihypertrophia</i>
P	
pain in a blood vessel	<i>angialgia</i>
pain in a joint	<i>arthralgia</i>
pain in a kidney	<i>nephralgia</i>
pain in a vertebra	<i>spondylodynia</i>
pain in several joints simultaneously	<i>polyarthralgia</i>
pain in th entire body	<i>panalgia</i>
pain in the arm	<i>brachialgia</i>
pain in the bladder	<i>cystalgia</i>
pain in the breast	<i>mastalgia</i>
pain in the breast	<i>mastodynia</i>
pain in the chest	<i>thoracalgia</i>
pain in the extremities	<i>acralgia</i>
pain in the liver	<i>hepatalgia</i>
pain in the rectum	<i>proctalgia</i>

pain in the stomach	<i>gastralgia</i>
pain in the tongue	<i>glossalgia</i>
pain occurring in the spine	<i>spondylalgia</i>
paralysis of a single part	<i>monoplegia</i>
paralysis of all four extremities	<i>tetraplegia</i>
paralysis of an eyelid	<i>blepharoplegia</i>
paralysis of corresponding parts on both sides of the body	<i>diplegia</i>
paralysis of one side of the body	<i>hemiplegia</i>
paralysis of the eye muscles.	<i>ophthalmoplegia</i>
paralysis of the stomach	<i>gastroplegia</i>
pendulous breasts	<i>mastopectōsis</i>
perception of unpleasant odors, when non exists	<i>kakosmia</i>
plastic repair of a joint (arthroplasty)	<i>arthroplastīca</i>
plastic repair of a tendon (tenoplasty)	<i>tenoplastīca</i>
plastic repair of the bladder and the colon (cystocoloplasty)	<i>cystocoloplastīca</i>
plastic repair of the rectum (proctoplasty)	<i>proctoplastīca</i>
plastic repair of the stomach (gastroplasty)	<i>gastroplastīca</i>
plastic surgery of the bones (osteoplasty)	<i>osteoplastīca</i>
plastic surgery of the colon (coloplasty)	<i>coloplastīca</i>
plastic surgery of the cornea (keratoplasty)	<i>keratoplastīca</i>
plastic surgery of the ear (otoplasty)	<i>otoplastīca</i>
plastic surgery of the eyelids (blepharoplasty)	<i>blepharoplastīca</i>
plastic surgery of the lips (cheiloplasty)	<i>cheiloplastica</i>
plastic surgery of the nose (rhinoplasty)	<i>rhinoplastīca</i>
plastic surgery of the palate (palatoplasty)	<i>palatoplastīca</i>
plastic surgery of the trachea (tracheoplasty)	<i>tracheoplastika</i>
plastic surgery performed on the skull (cranioplasty)	<i>cranioplastīca</i>
plastic surgery performed on the thorax (thoracoplasty)	<i>thoracoplastīca</i>
presence of a urinary calculus in the bladder	<i>cystolithiāsis</i>
presence of bilirubin in the urine	<i>bilirubinuria</i>
presence of calcium in the urine	<i>calciuria</i>
presence of calculi in the liver	<i>hepatolithiāsis</i>

presence of calculi in the pancreas or pancreatic duct	<i>pancreolithiāsis</i>
presence of calculi in the urinary system	<i>uro lithiāsis</i>
presence of calculi in the bronchi	<i>bronchol ithiāsis</i>
presence of glucose in the urine	<i>glucosuria</i>
presence of multiple hemangiomas	<i>haemangiomatōsis</i>
presence of white blood cells in the urine	<i>leucocyturia</i>
presence or formation of gallstones in the gallbladder or bile ducts	<i>chole lithiāsis</i>
process of formation of thrombocytes	<i>thrombocytopoēsis</i>
production of hormones (hormonopoiesis)	<i>hormonopoēsis</i>
production of leukocytes	<i>leucopoēsis</i>
production of monocytes	<i>monocytopoēsis</i>
progressive degeneration of an organ or tissue caused by loss of cells (hypotrophy)	<i>hypotrophy</i>
progressive wasting of muscle tissues (amyotrophy)	<i>amyotrophia</i>
prolapse of the uterus	<i>hysteroptōsis</i>
prolapse of the uterus	<i>metroptōsis</i>
prolapse or downward displacement of the colon	<i>coloptōsis</i>
protruding lips	<i>procheilia</i>
protrusion of mammary gland	<i>mastocēle</i>
protrusion of part of the brain through the skull	<i>cephalocēle</i>
protrusion of part of the brain through the skull	<i>craniocēle</i>
protrusion of the spinal cord	<i>myelocēle</i>
pus in the blood	<i>pyaemia</i>
pus in the urine	<i>pyuria</i>
<b>R</b>	
radiographic examination of a hernia (herniography)	<i>herniography</i>
radiographic examination of the amnion (amniography)	<i>amniographia</i>
radiographic examination of the liver (hepatography)	<i>hepatographia</i>
radiographic technique that produces a film representing a detailed cross section of tissue (tomography)	<i>tomographia</i>

radiography of a vein filled with contrast medium (phlebography)	<i>phlebographia</i>
radiography of an artery or arterial system after injection of a contrast medium (arteriography)	<i>arteriographia</i>
radiography of lymph nodes (lymphadenography)	<i>lymphadenographia</i>
radiography of the aorta after introduction into it of a contrast material (aortography)	<i>aortographia</i>
radiography of the blood vessels (angiography)	<i>angiographia</i>
radiography of the gallbladder (cholecystography)	<i>cholecystographia</i>
radiography of the heart and great vessels (angiocardiography)	<i>angiocardiographia</i>
radiography of the kidney (nephrography)	<i>nephrographia</i>
radiography of the mammary gland (mastography)	<i>mastographia</i>
radiography of the salivary glands or ducts following injection of contrast medium (sialography)	<i>sialographia</i>
radiography of the spinal cord (myelography)	<i>myelographia</i>
radiography of the urinary bladder (cystography)	<i>cystographia</i>
radiography of the uterine tubes (salpingography)	<i>salpingographia</i>
rapid heart beat of more than 100 beats per minute in an adult	<i>tachycardia</i>
rapid or hasty eating	<i>tachyphagia</i>
record or tracing produced by a sphygmograph (sphygmogram)	<i>sphygmogramma</i>
recording of the electrical activity of the brain (electroencephalography)	<i>electroencephalographia</i>
recording the form, strength, and variations of the arterial pulse (sphygmography)	<i>sphygmographia</i>
red coloration of the skin	<i>erythrodermia</i>
reduction in the number of lymphocytes in the blood	<i>lymphopenia</i>
removal and examination of a sample of duodenum tissue (duodenobiopsy)	<i>duodenobiopsia</i>
removal and examination of a sample of intestine tissue (enterobiopsy)	<i>enterobiopsia</i>
removal and examination of a sample of tissue from the stomach	<i>gastrobiopsia</i>

removal of a small piece of living tissue from an organ or other part of the body for microscopic examination	<i>biopsia</i>
representing, by drawings made from measurements, the configuration of the skull (craniography)	<i>craniographia</i>
roentgenography of the kidneys (pyelography)	<i>pyelographia</i>
roentgenologic examination of the uterus (metrography)	<i>metrographia</i>
roentgenologic examination of the uterus after the introduction of a contrast medium (hysterography)	<i>hysterographia</i>
rupture of a blood vessel	<i>angiorrhēxis</i>
rupture of the heart	<i>cardiorrhēxis</i>
rupture of the uterus	<i>hysterorrhēxis</i>
<b>S</b>	
scarcity of words - that is a condition in which a person says, fewer words than might normally be expected	<i>ologophasia</i>
scientific regulation of diet in treating disease (dietotherapy)	<i>dietotherapia</i>
scientific study of aging in all its aspects (gerontology)	<i>gerontologia</i>
scientific study of speech and speech habits (phoniatics)	<i>phoniatria</i>
sclerosis of the renal arterioles	<i>nephroangiosclerōsis</i>
slowness of the heartbeat, usually under 60 beats per minute in adults	<i>bradycardia</i>
spasm affecting only one side (hemispasm)	<i>hemispasmus</i>
spasm of the ce cum (typhlospasm)	<i>typhlospasmus</i>
spasm of the eyelid (blepharospasm)	<i>blepharospasmus</i>
spasm of the rectum (proctospasm)	<i>proctospasmus</i>
spasmodic contraction of the walls of a blood vessel (angiospasm)	<i>angiospasmus</i>
spasmodic contraction of the walls of the stomach (gastrospasm)	<i>gastrospasmus</i>
spontaneous flow of milk from the nipple (galactorrhea)	<i>galactorrhoea</i>

spontaneous splitting or breaking of the nails	<i>onychorrhēxis</i>
state of normal nourishment and growth	<i>eutrophia</i>
stiffness and tightness of the skin of the extremities	<i>acrosclerōsis</i>
stoppage of lymph flow	<i>lymphostāsis</i>
stoppage of the flow or discharge of urine	<i>urostāsis</i>
stoppage or suppression of bile flow	<i>cholestāsis</i>
stricture of a salivary duct	<i>sialostenosis</i>
stricture or narrowing of the orifice of the pylorus	<i>pylorostenōsis</i>
strong fear of being alone	<i>monophobia</i>
study of death and dying, especially of their psychological and social aspects (thanatology)	<i>thanatologia</i>
study of drug and alcohol abuse and associated treatments	<i>narcologia</i>
study of hernia (herniology)	<i>herniologia</i>
study of joints and ligaments (arthrology)	<i>arthrologia</i>
study of the causes and effects of congenital malformations and developmental abnormalities (teratology)	<i>teratology</i>
study of the stomach and intestine and their diseases (gastroenterology)	<i>gastroenterologia</i>
study of the vessels of the body (angiology)	<i>angiologia</i>
surgical anchoring of a tendon	<i>tenodēsis</i>
surgical construction of an opening between the intestine and the rectum	<i>enteroproctostomia</i>
surgical construction of an opening into the intestine (enterostomy)	<i>enterostomia</i>
surgical creation of a connection between the stomach and the jejunum (gastroenterostomy)	<i>gastroenterostomia</i>
surgical creation of an anastomosis between the stomach and jejunum (gastrojejunostomy)	<i>gastrojejunostomia</i>
surgical creation of an artificial opening into the stomach (gastrostomy)	<i>gastrostomia</i>
surgical excision of a joint (arthrectomy)	<i>arthrectomia</i>
surgical fixation of a displaced liver (hepatopexy)	<i>hepatopexia</i>
surgical fixation of a displaced omentum to the liver and diaphragm (hepatoomentophrenopexy)	<i>hepatoomentophrenopexia</i>

surgical fixation of a displaced uterus (hysteropexy)	<i>hysteropexia</i>
surgical fixation of a joint and a tendon	<i>arthrotenoděsis</i>
surgical fixation of a lung (pneumopexy)	<i>pneumopexia</i>
surgical fixation of a mobile kidney (nephropexy)	<i>nephropexia</i>
surgical fixation of the colon (colopexy)	<i>colopexia</i>
surgical fixation of the gallbladder (cholecystopexy)	<i>cholecystopexia</i>
surgical fixation of the omentum to the kidney (omentonephropexy)	<i>omentonephropexia</i>
surgical fixation of the omentum to the liver (omentohepatopexy)	<i>omentohepatopexia</i>
surgical fixation of the patella	<i>patelloděsis</i>
surgical fixation of the rectum (proctopexy)	<i>proctopexia</i>
surgical fixation of the spleen (splenopexy)	<i>splenopexia</i>
surgical fixation of the stomach (gastropexy)	<i>gastropexia</i>
surgical fixation of two or more vertebrae	<i>spondyloděsis</i>
surgical fixation of viscera (splanchnopexy)	<i>splanchnopexia</i>
surgical formation of a communication between the stomach and the duodenum (gastroduodenostomy)	<i>gastroduodenostomia</i>
surgical formation of a permanent opening into the duodenum (duodenostomy)	<i>duodenostomia</i>
surgical formation of an artificial opening into the rectum (proctostomy)	<i>proctostomia</i>
surgical incision into the abdominal cavity (laparotomy)	<i>laparotomia</i>
surgical incision into the trachea (tracheotomy)	<i>tracheotomia</i>
surgical incision of a gland (adenotomy)	<i>adenotomia</i>
surgical incision of the heart	<i>cardiotomia</i>
surgical incision of the urinary bladder (cystotomy)	<i>cystotomia</i>
surgical operation for fixing the cecum (typhlopexy)	<i>typhlopexia</i>
surgical puncture of the abdomen (abdominocentesis)	<i>laparocentēsis</i>
surgical puncture of the amniotic sac	<i>amniocentēsis</i>

surgical puncture of the chest wall into the parietal cavity	<i>pleurocentēsis</i>
surgical removal of a clot from a blood vessel (thrombectomy)	<i>thrombectomy</i>
surgical removal of a kidney (nephrectomy)	<i>nephrectomia</i>
surgical removal of a salivary gland (sialadenectomy)	<i>sialadenectomy</i>
surgical removal of part of the iris of the eye (iridectomy)	<i>iridectomy</i>
surgical removal of the breast (mastectomy)	<i>mastectomy</i>
surgical removal of the colon and rectum (coloproctectomy)	<i>coloproctectomy</i>
surgical removal of the fallopian tube (salpingectomy)	<i>salpingectomy</i>
surgical removal of the gallbladder (cholecystectomy)	<i>cholecystectomy</i>
surgical removal of the large bowel (colectomy)	<i>colectomia</i>
surgical removal of the pancreas (pancreatectomy)	<i>pancreatectomia</i>
surgical removal of the rectum and all or part of the colon (proctocolectomy)	<i>proctocolectomia</i>
surgical removal of the spleen (splenectomy)	<i>splenectomy</i>
surgical removal of the uterus	<i>hysterectomy</i>
surgical removal of the rectum and all or part of the colon (proctocolectomy)	<i>proctocolectomy</i>
surgical repair of a defect in the urinary bladder (cystoplasty)	<i>cystoplastīca</i>
surgical repair of a hernia (herniorrhaphy)	<i>herniorrhaphia</i>
surgical repair of the patella (patelloplasty)	<i>patelloplastīca</i>
surgical rupture of the fetal membranes (amniotomy)	<i>amniotomia</i>
surgical suture of the intestine (enterorrhaphy)	<i>enterorrhaphia</i>
surgical transection of a tendon (tenotomy)	<i>tenotomia</i>
surgically-created connection between the urinary bladder and the skin (cystostomy)	<i>cystostomia</i>
suture of a divided nerve (neurorrhaphy)	<i>neurorrhaphia</i>
suture of a relaxed vagina to the abdominal wall (colpopexy)	<i>colpopexia</i>
suture of a tendon (tenorrhaphy)	<i>tenorrhaphia</i>

suture of the kidney (nephrorrhaphy)	<i>nephrorrhaphia</i>
suture of the liver (hepatorrhaphy)	<i>hepatorrhaphia</i>
suture of the spleen (splenorrhaphy)	<i>splenorrhaphia</i>
suture of the uterus (hysterorrhaphy)	<i>hysterorrhaphia</i>
suture of the vagina (colporrhaphy)	<i>colporrhaphia</i>
suture or repair of the gallbladder (cholecystorrhaphy)	<i>cholecystorrhaphia</i>
<b>T</b>	
temporary absence or cessation of breathing (apnea)	<i>apnõë</i>
test of bladder function in which pressure and volume of fluid in the bladder is measured (cystometry)	<i>cystometria</i>
therapeutic application of magnetic fields (magnetotherapy)	<i>magnitoterapia</i>
therapeutic method using one or more vitamins (vitaminotherapy)	<i>vitaminoterapia</i>
thickening and hardening of the walls of the blood vessels	<i>angiosclerosis</i>
thickening or hardening of the walls of a vein	<i>phlebosclerõsis</i>
toothache	<i>odontalgia</i>
tracing of the electric impulses of the brain	<i>electroencephalogramm a</i>
treatment by the use of hormones (hormonotherapy)	<i>hormonoterapia</i>
treatment of disease by chemical agents (chemotherapy)	<i>chimioterapia</i>
treatment of disease by means of a favorable climate (climatotherapy)	<i>climatoterapia</i>
treatment of disease by the use of blood or blood derivatives (hemotherapy)	<i>haemoterapia</i>
treatment of disease with medicines (pharmacotherapy)	<i>pharmacoterapia</i>
treatment of disorders with physical agents and methods, such as massage, manipulation, therapeutic exercises, cold, heat, hydrotherapy, electrical stimulation, light (physiotherapy)	<i>physiotherapia</i>
treatment of mental disorders by means of music (musicotherapy)	<i>musicoterapia</i>

treatment of mental disorders by psychological methods (psychotherapy)	<i>psychotherapia</i>
treatment of neoplastic disease by using roentgen rays (radiotherapy)	<i>radiotherapia</i>
treatment system based on sea bathing and exposure to sea air (thalassotherapy)	<i>thalassotherapia</i>
tumor composed chiefly of lymphatic vessels or blood vessels	<i>angiōma</i>
tumor composed of both glandular and fatty tissue elements	<i>adenolipōma</i>
tumor of dental tissues	<i>odontōma</i>
tumor of the liver	<i>hepatōma</i>
tumor of the lymph nodes	<i>lymphadenōma</i>
type of cancer that originates from connective tissue such as bone or muscle	<i>sarcōma</i>
<b>U</b>	
uncontrollable impulse to start fires	<i>pyromania</i>
urinary calculus	<i>urolīthus</i>
urination at night	<i>nycturia</i>
use of mechanical apparatus in treatment of disease (mechanotherapy)	<i>mechanotherapia</i>
use of products produced by honeybees for therapeutic and pharmacologic purposes (apitherapy)	<i>apitherapia</i>
uterine bleeding	<i>metrorrhagia</i>
<b>V</b>	
venous calculus (phlebolith)	<i>phlebolīthus</i>
very rapid respiration (tachypnea)	<i>tachypnōë</i>
vision abnormality in which all objects appear reddish	<i>erythroptisia</i>
visual disorder in which objects appear larger than their actual size	<i>macropsia</i>
visual disorder in which objects appear smaller than their actual size	<i>micropsia</i>
visual examination of a joint after injection of a contrast medium (arthrography)	<i>arthrographia</i>
visual examination of interior structures of the body with an endoscope (endoscopy)	<i>endoscopia</i>

visual examination of the duodenum by means of an endoscope (duodenoscopy)	<i>duodenosopia</i>
visual examination of the interior of a joint by means of an arthroscope (arthrosopy)	<i>arthrosopia</i>
visual examination of the pelvis and the calices of the kidney (pyeloscopy)	<i>pyelosopia</i>
visual examination of the rectum by means of a proctoscope (proctoscopy)	<i>proctosopia</i>
visual examination of the urinary tract with an endoscope (cystoscopy)	<i>cystosopia</i>
visual inspection of the interior of the stomach with a gastroscope (gastrosopy)	<i>gastrosopia</i>
visual inspection of the uterine cavity with an endoscope	<i>hysterosopia</i>
visualization of blood vessels with a special microscope (angioscopy)	<i>angiosopia</i>
visualization of the kidney by means of the nephroscope (nephrosopy)	<i>nephrosopia</i>
visualization of the small bowel using a fiber optic endoscope (enteroscopy)	<i>enterosopia</i>
voice impairment	<i>dysphonia</i>
vomiting of blood	<i>haematemesis</i>
<b>W</b>	
wasting or decrease in the size of an organ or tissue (atrophy)	<i>atrophia</i>
writing with very large letters	<i>megalographia</i>
<b>Y</b>	
yellow and red coloration of the skin	<i>xanthoerythrodermia</i>
yellowish discoloration of the skin	<i>xanthochromia</i>

Учебное издание

Dmitri Kondratyev  
Alla Ryabova

**Кондратьев Дмитрий Константинович**  
**Рябова Алла Михайловна**

MEDICAL LATIN

Course

МЕДИЦИНСКАЯ ЛАТЫНЬ

Пособие

Ответственный за выпуск В.В.Воробьев

Компьютерная верстка А.В.Яроцкая

Подписано в печать 19.05.2011. Формат 60x84/16. Бумага офсетная.

Гарнитура Таймс. Ризография.

Усл. печ. л. 16,5. Уч.-изд. л. 9,6. Тираж 30 экз. Заказ 67.

Издатель и полиграфическое исполнение  
учреждение образования

«Гродненский государственный медицинский университет».

ЛИ № 02330/0548511 от 16.06.2009. Ул. Горького, 80, 230009, Гродно.